The Nikon Guide to Digital Photography with the

D2H

DIGITAL CAMERA
The documentation for this product includes the manuals listed below. Please be sure to read all instructions thoroughly to get the most from your camera.

*Quick Start Guide*

The *Quick Start Guide* takes you through the process of unpacking and setting up your Nikon digital camera, taking your first photographs, and transferring them to your computer.

*Guide to Digital Photography*

The *Guide to Digital Photography* (this manual) provides complete operating instructions for your camera.

*Reference CD*

The reference CD contains information on the software provided with the camera. See the *Quick Start Guide* for viewing instructions.

---

**CAUTION: Foreign Matter on the Low-Pass Filter**

Nikon takes every possible precaution to prevent foreign matter from coming into contact with the low-pass filter during production and shipping. The D2H, however, is designed to be used with interchangeable lenses, and foreign matter may enter the camera when lenses are removed or exchanged. Once inside the camera, this foreign matter may adhere to the low-pass filter, where it may appear in photographs taken under certain conditions. To prevent foreign matter from entering the camera, do not exchange lenses in dusty environments. To protect the camera when no lens is in place, be sure to replace the body cap provided with the camera, being careful to first remove all dust and other foreign matter that may be adhering to the body cap.

Should foreign matter find its way onto the low-pass filter, clean the low-pass filter as instructed on pages 240–241 of this manual, or have the low-pass filter cleaned by authorized Nikon service personnel. Photographs affected by the presence of foreign matter on the low-pass filter can be retouched using Nikon Capture 4 (available separately) or the clean image options available in some third-party imaging software.
How to Read This Manual

First, be aware of the warnings, cautions, and notices on pages ii–vii.

Next, read “Overview” and “Getting to Know the Camera” to familiarize yourself with the conventions used in this manual and the names of camera parts, then set up your camera as described in “First Steps.”

Now you are ready to take photographs and play them back.

Once you have mastered the basics of digital photography, you can read these sections for complete information on when and how to use camera controls.

Refer to these chapters for more on thumbnail playback, playback zoom, and photo information…

…on recording and playing voice memos…

…on camera menus and custom settings…

…on connecting to a computer or TV…

…and on optional accessories, camera care, and troubleshooting.
For Your Safety

To prevent damage to your Nikon product or injury to yourself or to others, read the following safety precautions in their entirety before using this equipment. Keep these safety instructions where all those who use the product will read them.

The consequences that could result from failure to observe the precautions listed in this section are indicated by the following symbol:

⚠️ This icon marks warnings, information that should be read before using this Nikon product to prevent possible injury.

WARNINGS

⚠️ Do not look at the sun through the viewfinder
Viewing the sun or other strong light source through the viewfinder could cause permanent visual impairment.

⚠️ Turn off immediately in the event of malfunction
Should you notice smoke or an unusual smell coming from the equipment or from the AC adapter (available separately), unplug the AC adapter and remove the battery immediately, taking care to avoid burns. Continued operation could result in injury. After removing the battery, take the equipment to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠️ Do not use in the presence of flammable gas
Do not use electronic equipment in the presence of flammable gas, as this could result in explosion or fire.

⚠️ Do not place strap around the neck of an infant or child
Placing the camera strap around the neck of an infant or child could result in strangulation.

⚠️ Do not disassemble
Touching the product’s internal parts could result in injury. In the event of a malfunction, the product should be repaired only by a qualified technician. Should the product break open as the result of a fall or other accident, remove the battery and/or AC adapter and then take the product to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠️ Observe proper precautions when handling batteries
Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries for use in this product:

• Be sure the product is off before replacing the battery. If you are using an AC adapter, be sure it is unplugged.
• Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.
• Do not attempt to insert the battery upside down or backwards.
• Do not short or disassemble the battery.
• Do not expose the battery to flame or to excessive heat.
• Do not immerse in or expose to water.
• Replace the terminal cover when transporting the battery. Do not transport or store with metal objects such as necklaces or hairpins.
• Batteries are prone to leakage when fully discharged. To avoid damage to the product, be sure to remove the battery when no charge remains.
• When the battery is not in use, attach the terminal cover and store in a cool place.
• Immediately after use, or when the product is used on battery power for an extended period, the battery may become hot. Before removing the battery, turn the camera off and allow the battery to cool.
• Discontinue use immediately should you notice any changes in the battery, such as discoloration or deformation.

⚠️ Use appropriate cables
When connecting cables to the input and output jacks, use only the cables provided or sold by Nikon for the purpose, to maintain compliance with product regulations.

⚠️ Keep out of reach of children
Particular care should be taken to prevent infants from putting the battery or other small parts into their mouths.

⚠️ Removing memory cards
Memory cards may become hot during use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.

⚠️ CD-ROMs
The CD-ROMs on which the software and manuals are distributed should not be played back on audio CD equipment. Playing CD-ROMs on an audio CD player could cause hearing loss or damage the equipment.

⚠️ Observe caution when using a flash
Using a flash close to your subject’s eyes could cause temporary visual impairment. Particular care should be observed if photographing infants, when the flash should be no less than one meter (39”) from the subject.

⚠️ When using the viewfinder
When operating the diopter adjustment control with your eye to the viewfinder, care should be taken not to put your finger in your eye accidentally.

⚠️ Avoid contact with liquid crystal
Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury due to broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes or mouth.
Do not drop
The product may malfunction if subjected to strong shocks or vibration.

Keep dry
This product is not waterproof, and may malfunction if immersed in water or exposed to high levels of humidity. Rusting of the internal mechanism can cause irreparable damage.

Avoid sudden changes in temperature
Sudden changes in temperature, such as occur when entering or leaving a heated building on a cold day, can cause condensation inside the device. To prevent condensation, place the device in a carrying case or a plastic bag before exposing it to sudden changes in temperature.

Keep away from strong magnetic fields
Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage data stored on the memory card, or affect the product’s internal circuitry.

Do not point the lens at strong light sources for extended periods
Avoid pointing the lens at the sun or other strong light sources for extended periods when using or storing the camera. Intense light may cause deterioration in the image sensor, producing a white blur effect in photographs.

Do not touch the shutter curtain
The shutter curtain is extremely thin and easily damaged. Under no circumstances should you exert pressure on the curtain, poke it with cleaning tools, or subject it to powerful air currents from a blower. These actions could scratch, deform, or tear the curtain.

Handle all moving parts with care
Do not apply force to the battery-chamber, card-slot, or connector covers. These parts are especially susceptible to damage.

Cleaning
• When cleaning the camera body, use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using your camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off any sand or salt using a cloth lightly dampened with pure water and then dry your camera thoroughly. In rare instances, static electricity produced by a brush or cloth may cause the LCD displays to light up or darken. This does not indicate a malfunction, and the display will shortly return to normal.
• When cleaning the lens and mirror, remember that these elements are easily damaged. Dust and lint should be gently removed with a blower. When using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical (tilting the can could result in liquid being sprayed on the mirror). If you do get a fingerprint or other stain on the lens, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and wipe the lens carefully.
• See “Technical Notes: Caring for Your Camera” for information on cleaning the low-pass filter (240).

Storage
• To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. If you will not be using the product for long periods, remove the battery to prevent leakage and store the camera in a plastic bag containing a desiccant. Do not, however, store the camera case in a plastic bag, as this may cause the material to deteriorate. Note that desiccant gradually loses its capacity to absorb moisture and should be replaced at regular intervals.
• Do not store the camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls, close to equipment that produces strong magnetic fields, or in areas subject to extremes of temperature, for example near a space heater or in a closed vehicle on a hot day.
• To prevent mold or mildew, take the camera out of storage at least once a month. Turn the camera on and release the shutter a few times before putting the camera away again.
• Store the battery in a cool, dry place. Replace the terminal cover before putting the battery away.

Notes on the monitor
• The monitor may contain a few pixels that are always lit or that do not light. This is a characteristic common to all TFT LCD monitors and does not indicate a malfunction. Images recorded with the product will not be affected.
• Images in the monitor may be difficult to see in a bright light.
• Do not apply pressure to the monitor; this could cause damage or malfunction. Dust or lint on the monitor can be removed with a blower. Stains can be removed by rubbing the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather.
• Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury due to broken glass and to prevent the liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes or mouth.
• Replace the monitor cover when transporting the camera or leaving it unattended.

Turn the product off before removing or disconnecting the power source
Do not unplug the product or remove the battery while the product is on, or while images are being recorded or deleted. Forcibly cutting power to the product in these circumstances could result in loss of data or in damage to product memory or internal circuitry. To prevent an accidental interruption of power, avoid carrying the product from one location to another while the AC adapter is connected.

Batteries
• When you turn the device on, check the battery-level displayed in the control panel to determine whether the battery needs to be replaced. The battery needs to be replaced when the battery-level indicator is flashing.
• Ready a spare battery and keep it fully charged when taking photographs on important occasions. Depending on your location, you may find it difficult to purchase replacement batteries on short notice.
• On cold days, the capacity of batteries tends to decrease. Be sure the battery is fully charged before taking photographs outside in cold weather. Keep a spare battery in a warm place and exchange the two as necessary. Once warmed, a cold battery may recover some of its charge.
• Should the battery terminals become dirty, wipe them off with a clean, dry cloth before use.
• After removing the battery from the camera, be sure to replace the terminal cover.

Memory cards
• Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Inserting or removing cards with the power on could render them unusable.
• Insert memory cards as shown in the illustration at right. Inserting cards upside down or backwards could damage the camera or the card.
• No part of the manuals included with this product may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without Nikon's prior written permission.
• Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in these manuals at any time and without prior notice.
• Nikon will not be held liable for any damages resulting from the use of this product.
• While every effort has been made to ensure that the information in these manuals is accurate and complete, we would appreciate it were you to bring any errors or omissions to the attention of the Nikon representative in your area (address provided separately).

Notice for customers in the U.S.A.
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Radio Frequency Interference Statement
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
• Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
• Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
• Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
• Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.

CAUTIONS
Modifications
The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Nikon Corporation may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Interface Cables
Use the interface cables sold or provided by Nikon for your equipment. Using other interface cables may exceed the limits of Class B Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Notice for customers in the State of California
WARNING: Handling the cord on this product will expose you to lead, a chemical known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Nikon Inc.,
1300 Walt Whitman Road, Melville, New York 11747-3064, U.S.A. Tel.: 631-547-4200
Notice for customers in Canada

CAUTION
This class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference Causing Equipment Regulations.

ATTENTION
Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

Notice Concerning Prohibition of Copying or Reproduction

Note that simply being in possession of material that has been digitally copied or reproduced by means of a scanner, digital camera or other device may be punishable by law.

- **Items prohibited by law from being copied or reproduced**
  Do not copy or reproduce paper money, coins, securities, government bonds, or local government bonds, even if such copies or reproductions are stamped “Sample.”

  The copying or reproduction of paper money, coins, or securities which are circulated in a foreign country is prohibited.

  Unless the prior permission of the government has been obtained, the copying or reproduction of unused postage stamps or post cards issued by the government is prohibited.

  The copying or reproduction of stamps issued by the government and of certified documents stipulated by law is prohibited.

  - **Cautions on certain copies and reproductions**
    The government has issued cautions on copies or reproductions of securities issued by private companies (shares, bills, checks, gift certificates, etc.), commuter passes, or coupon tickets, except when a minimum of necessary copies are to be provided for business use by a company.

    Also, do not copy or reproduce passports issued by the government, licenses issued by public agencies and private groups, ID cards, and tickets, such as passes and meal coupons.

  - **Comply with copyright notices**
    The copying or reproduction of copyrighted creative works such as books, music, paintings, woodcut prints, maps, drawings, movies, and photographs is governed by national and international copyright laws. Do not use this product for the purpose of making illegal copies or to infringe copyright laws.

Trademark Information

Apple, the Apple logo, Macintosh, Mac OS, Power Macintosh, and PowerBook are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. Power Mac, iMac, and iBook are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Pentium is a trademark of Intel Corporation. CompactFlash is a trademark of SanDisk Corporation. Microdrive is a registered trademark of Hitachi Global Storage Technologies in the United States and/or other countries. Lexar Media is a trademark of Lexar Media Corporation. All other trade names mentioned in this manual or the other documentation provided with your Nikon product are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
# Table of Contents

For Your Safety........................................................................................................ ii
Caring for the Camera and Battery ..................................................................... iv
Notices.................................................................................................................. vi

**Introduction** .................................................................................................... 1
  Overview ........................................................................................................... 2
  Getting to Know the Camera ........................................................................... 3

**First Steps** ..................................................................................................... 15
  Step 1—Attach the Camera Strap .................................................................... 16
  Step 2—Insert the Battery ................................................................................ 17
  Step 3—Choose a Language............................................................................ 18
  Step 4—Set the Time and Date ........................................................................ 19
  Step 5—Attach a Lens...................................................................................... 20
  Step 6—Insert a Memory Card......................................................................... 22

**Tutorial** .......................................................................................................... 25
  Basic Photography ........................................................................................... 26
    Step 1—Ready the Camera ............................................................................. 27
    Step 2—Adjust Camera Settings ..................................................................... 29
    Step 3—Frame a Photograph ......................................................................... 31
    Step 4—Focus ................................................................................................ 32
    Step 5—Check Exposure............................................................................... 33
    Step 6—Take the Photograph ........................................................................ 34
  Basic Playback .................................................................................................. 35
  Taking Photographs .......................................................................................... 37
  Using Camera Menus....................................................................................... 39

**Image Quality and Size** .................................................................................. 41
  Image Quality .................................................................................................. 41
  Image Size ........................................................................................................ 44

**Sensitivity (ISO Equivalency)** ......................................................................... 48
  White Balance .................................................................................................. 51
  Fine-Tuning White Balance ............................................................................. 54
  Choosing a Color Temperature ......................................................................... 56
  Preset White Balance ....................................................................................... 57

**Image Adjustment** ........................................................................................ 65
  Making Edges More Distinct: *Image Sharpening* ........................................ 65
  Adjusting Contrast: *Tone Compensation* ...................................................... 66
  Suiting Colors to a Workflow: *Color Mode* .................................................. 67
  Controlling Color: *Hue Adjustment* ............................................................... 69

**Choosing a Shooting Mode** ............................................................................. 70

**Focus** ............................................................................................................. 72
  Focus Mode ..................................................................................................... 72
  Focus Area Selection ....................................................................................... 74
  Autofocus .......................................................................................................... 76
  AF Area Mode .................................................................................................. 76
This chapter is divided into the following sections:

**Overview**
Read this section for a description of how this manual is organized and for an explanation of the symbols and conventions used.

**Getting to Know the Camera**
Bookmark this section and refer to it for information on the names and functions of camera parts.

**First Steps**
This section details the steps required to ready the camera for use: inserting the battery and memory card, attaching a lens and camera strap, and setting the date, time, and language.
Thank you for your purchase of a Nikon D2H single-lens reflex (SLR) digital camera with interchangeable lenses. This manual has been written to help you enjoy taking pictures with your Nikon digital camera. Read this manual thoroughly before use, and keep it handy when using the product.

To make it easier to find the information you need, the following symbols and conventions are used:

- This icon marks cautions, information that should be read before use to prevent damage to the camera.
- This icon marks tips, additional information that may be helpful when using the camera.
- This icon marks notes, information that should be read before using the camera.
- This icon indicates that more information is available elsewhere in this manual or in the Quick Start Guide.
- This icon marks settings that can be fine-tuned from the Custom Settings menu.
- This icon marks settings that can be adjusted using camera menus.

**Take Test Shots**
Before taking pictures on important occasions (for example, at weddings or before taking the camera with you on a trip), take a test shot to ensure that the camera is functioning normally. Nikon will not be held liable for damages or lost profits that may result from product malfunction.

**Life-Long Learning**
As part of Nikon’s “Life-Long Learning” commitment to ongoing product support and education, continually-updated information is available on-line at the following sites:
- For users in the U.S.A.: http://www.nikonusa.com/
- For users in Europe: http://www.europe-nikon.com/support
- For users in Asia, Oceania, the Middle East, and Africa: http://www.nikon-asia.com/

Visit these sites to keep up-to-date with the latest product information, tips, answers to frequently-asked questions (FAQs), and general advice on digital imaging and photography. Additional information may be available from the Nikon representative in your area. See the URL below for contact information:

http://nikonimaging.com/

**Replacing This Manual**
Should you lose this manual, replacements can be ordered, for a fee, from any authorized Nikon service representative.
Introduction—Getting to Know the Camera

Take a few moments to familiarize yourself with camera controls and displays. You may find it helpful to bookmark this section and refer to it as you read through the rest of the manual.

**Camera Body**

![Camera Diagram]

- **Bracketing (BKT) button**: 98, 103
- **Mode dial lock release**: 70
- **Mode dial**: 70
- **Eyelet for camera strap**: 16
- **Flash sync mode (L) button**: 114
- **Command lock (L) button**: 94
- **Accessory shoe**: 117
- **Diopter adjustment knob**: 31
- **Focal plane mark (––):** 83
- **Metering selector**: 84
- **Exposure mode (MODE) button**: 85
- **Format (FORMAT) button**: 23
- **Power switch**: 27
- **Shutter-release button**: 32, 34
- **Exposure compensation (C) button**: 97
- **Eyelet for camera strap**: 16
- **Top control panel**: 6

**LCD Illuminators**

The control panel backlights (LCD illuminators) will light while the power switch is held in the position, allowing the display to be read in the dark. After the power switch is released, the illuminator will remain lit while the camera exposure meters are active or until the shutter is released.
Camera Body (continued)

- Ambient light sensor: 51, 57
- Self-timer lamp: 123
- Flash sync terminal: 117
- 10-pin remote terminal: 235
- Audio/video (A/V) connector (under cover): 222
- Housings for flash sync and 10-pin remote terminal caps (on inside of cover)
- DC-in connector (under cover): 231
- USB connector (under cover): 224
- Lens release button: 21
- Focus-mode selector: 72
- Battery cover latch: 17

Depth-of-field preview button: 85
Sub-command dial: 12
FUNC. button: 201
Sub-command dial for vertical shooting: 12
Shutter-release button for vertical shooting: 31
Vertical shooting shutter-release button lock
Connector for optional WT-1/WT-1A wireless LAN adapter (under cover): 217
Tripod socket
Introduction—Getting to Know the Camera

Eyepiece shutter lever: 31
Delete ( ) button: 35, 138
Format ( ) button: 23
Playback ( ) button: 130
Monitor: 16, 35, 237
Menu ( ) button: 39
Thumbnail ( ) button: 134
Protect ( ) button: 137
Enter ( ) button: 40
Playback zoom ( ) button: 136
Speaker: 145
Rear control panel: 8
Sensitivity (ISO) button: 49
Image quality/size (QUAL) button: 43
White balance (WB) button: 53
Viewfinder eyepiece: 31, 232
AE/AF lock ( ) button: 80, 95
AF-ON ( ) button: 73
Main command dial: 12
Multi selector: 14
Focus selector lock: 74
Memory card access lamp: 22, 24
AF-area mode selector: 76
Memory card slot cover: 22
Card-slot cover release button (under cover): 22
Main command dial for vertical shooting: 12
AF-ON ( ) button for vertical shooting: 73
Microphone ( ) button: 140
Microphone: 140

The Speaker and Microphone
Do not bring magnetic devices, such as microdrive cards, close to the built-in speaker or microphone.
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shutter speed .......... 85, 93, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exposure compensation value .......... 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of shots in bracketing sequence .......... 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of intervals for interval timer photography .......... 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Focal length (non-CPU lens) .......... 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sensitivity (ISO equivalency) .......... 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Shutter-speed lock icon .......... 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Flexible program indicator .......... 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Exposure mode .......... 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Memory card indicator .......... 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Focus area .......... 74, 78–79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AF-area mode .......... 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Flash sync mode .......... 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Number of exposures remaining .......... 28, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills .......... 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capture mode indicator .......... 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Aperture stop indicator .......... 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Aperture (f/-number) .......... 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aperture (number of stops) .......... 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bracketing increment .......... 99, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of shots per interval .......... 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum aperture (non-CPU lens) .......... 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PC mode indicator .......... 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Battery indicator .......... 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Frame count .......... 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>“K” (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) .......... 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>FV lock indicator .......... 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Sync indicator .......... 115, 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Clock battery indicator .......... 19, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Exposure compensation indicator .......... 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Interval timer indicator .......... 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Aperture lock icon .......... 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Image comment indicator .......... 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Exposure bracketing indicator .......... 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White-balance bracketing indicator .......... 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Electronic analog exposure display .......... 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exposure compensation .......... 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bracketing progress indicator .......... 100–102, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PC mode indicator .......... 225</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Rear Control Panel

1. SHOOT
2. CUSTOM
3. WB-BKT
4. ISO-AUTO REM
5. RAW + FINE
6. Tiff
7. NORM
8. BASIC
9. REC
10. AM
11. PRE
12. K
13. KEK
Introduction—Getting to Know the Camera

1. Custom settings bank ................. 173
2. “Remaining” indicator ............. 28, 47
3. Shooting menu settings bank .... 162
4. Sensitivity (ISO) indicator .......... 49
   Auto sensitivity indicator ......... 183
5. Sensitivity ................................ 49
   Sensitivity (high gain) .......... 49
   Number of exposures remaining .......... 28, 47
   Length of voice memo .............. 141
   White balance fine-tuning ......... 55
   White balance preset number ...... 57
   Color temperature .................. 56
   PC mode indicator .................. 225
6. “K” (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) ......... 47
   Color temperature indicator ....... 56
7. Image quality .......................... 43
8. Image size ................................ 45
9. White-balance bracketing indicator .................. 103
10. Voice memo recording indicator (shooting mode) .................. 141
11. Voice memo status indicator ...... 141
12. Voice memo recording mode ...... 141
13. White balance mode .................. 51
The Viewfinder Display

1. Viewfinder display area
2. Focus area indicators
3. Exposure compensation
4. ISO setting
5. Aperture value
6. Shutter speed
7. Exposure compensation level
8. Metering mode
9. White balance
10. Flash mode
11. Custom settings
12. Image quality
13. Color temperature
14. Temperature setting
15. Battery level
16. Metering mode indicator
17. Flash mode indicator
18. Exposure compensation indicator
19. ISO setting indicator
20. Aperture value indicator
21. Exposure compensation level indicator
22. Metering mode indicator
23. White balance indicator
24. Battery level indicator
25. Flash mode indicator
26. Exposure compensation level indicator
27. ISO setting indicator
**The Command Dials**

The main- and sub-command dials are used alone or in combination with other controls to adjust a variety of settings. For ease of access when taking photographs in tall (portrait) orientation, dials that duplicate the functions of the main and sub-command dials have been placed close to the shutter-release button for vertical shooting (4).

**Image quality and size**

- **Set image quality (43).**

- **Choose an image size (45).**

**White balance**

- **Choose a white balance setting (53).**

- **Fine-tune white balance/choose a color temperature/choose a white balance preset (55).**

**Sensitivity (ISO equivalency)**

- **Set sensitivity (ISO equivalency; 49).**
### Exposure

1. **Choose the exposure mode** (86–93).

2. **Choose a combination of aperture and shutter speed** (exposure mode P; 86).

3. **Choose a shutter speed** (exposure mode S or M; 88, 92).

4. **Choose an aperture** (exposure mode A or M; 90, 92).

5. **Set exposure compensation** (97).

6. **Shutter speed lock** (exposure mode S or M; 94).

7. **Aperture lock** (exposure mode A or M; 94).

8. **Activate or cancel bracketing/select number of shots in bracketing sequence** (98, 103).

9. **Select bracketing exposure increment** (99, 103).

### Flash settings

10. **Choose a flash sync mode for optional Speedlight** (114).
The Multi Selector

The multi selector is used for the following operations:

**Menu navigation**
Move highlight bar up (39).

**Shooting**
Select focus area above current focus area (74).

**Full-frame playback**
Display previous image (132).

**Thumbnail playback**
Highlight thumbnail above current thumbnail (134).

**Menu navigation**
Cancel and return to previous menu (40).

**Shooting**
Select focus area to left of current focus area (74).

**Full-frame playback**
Display previous page of photo information (132).

**Thumbnail playback**
Highlight thumbnail to left of current thumbnail (134).

**Menu navigation**
Select highlighted item or display sub-menu (39).

**Shooting**
Select focus area below current focus area (74).

**Full-frame playback**
Display next image (132).

**Thumbnail playback**
Highlight thumbnail below current thumbnail (134).

The button can also be used to select items highlighted in the camera menus. There may be some cases in which the operations listed on this page do not apply.
Before using your camera for the first time, complete the following steps:

**STEP 1** Attach the Camera Strap  
**STEP 2** Insert the Battery  
To learn more about batteries and alternative power sources, see:  
• Technical Notes: Optional Accessories ......................... 231  
• Caring for the Camera and Battery ............................. iv–v

**STEP 3** Choose a Language  
**STEP 4** Set the Time and Date  
For information on changing the clock battery, see:  
• Technical Notes: Caring for your camera ..................... 239

**STEP 5** Attach a Lens  
To learn more about the lenses available for the D2H, see:  
• Technical Notes: Optional Accessories ......................... 228–230

**STEP 6** Insert a Memory Card  
To learn more about compatible memory cards, see:  
• Technical Notes: Approved Memory Cards ................... 236  
For more information on formatting memory cards, see:  
• The Setup Menu: Formatting Memory Cards ............... 207
Step 1—Attach the Camera Strap

Attach the camera strap securely to the two eyelets on the camera body as shown below.

1. Scrape the strap through the eyelet.
2. Pull the strap through the eyelet.
3. Loop the strap.
4. Tighten the strap.

The Monitor Cover

A clear plastic cover (the BM-3 LCD monitor cover) is provided with the camera to keep the monitor clean, and to protect the monitor when the camera is not in use or when you are transporting the camera. To remove the monitor cover, hold the camera firmly, take the cover by its edges, and pull the bottom of the cover gently outwards as shown at right (①). Once the cover is unlatched, you can move it slightly away from the monitor and then remove it as shown (②).

To replace the cover for shooting or storage, insert the two projections on the top of the cover into the matching indentations above the camera monitor (①), then press the bottom of the cover until you hear it click into place (②).

EN-EL4 Batteries (17)

EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion batteries can provide compatible devices with information on battery charge state, enabling the MH-21 Quick Charger to display the current charge level and charge the battery appropriately. When the EN-EL4 is inserted in the camera, the battery charge state is shown in six levels. Detailed information on battery charge, battery life, and the number of pictures taken since the battery was last charged can be viewed using the Battery info option in the setup menu (216).
Step 2—Insert the Battery

The D2H is powered by a rechargeable Nikon EN-EL4 Li-ion battery (provided).

2.1 Charge the battery
The EN-EL4 is not fully charged at shipment. To maximize shooting time, charge the battery in the supplied MH-21 quick charger before use (see the MH-21 instruction manual for details). About 100 minutes are required to fully recharge the battery when no charge remains.

2.2 Turn the camera off
Turn the camera off before inserting or removing batteries.

2.3 Remove the battery-chamber cover
Turn the battery-chamber cover latch to the open position (2) and remove the battery-chamber cover.

2.4 Attach the battery cover to the battery
The battery can be charged with the cover attached. See the instructions provided with the EN-EL4 for details.

2.5 Insert the battery
Insert the battery as shown at right.

2.6 Latch the battery-chamber cover
To prevent the battery from being dislodged during operation, be sure the cover is securely latched.

Removing the Battery
Before removing the battery, turn the camera off and rotate the battery-chamber cover latch to the open position (3).

Camera Off Display
If a battery and memory card are inserted, the frame count and number of exposures remaining will be displayed even when the camera is off (with some memory cards, it may be necessary to turn the camera on to view the frame count and number of exposures remaining).
Step 3—Choose a Language

Camera menus and messages can be displayed in your choice of German, English, Spanish, French, Chinese, and Japanese.

3.1 Turn camera on.

3.2 Display menus (if option is highlighted, press multi selector to left until icon at left of menu is selected).

3.3 Display SET UP menu.

3.4 Position cursor in SET UP menu.

3.5 Highlight Language.

3.6 Display options.

3.7 Highlight option.

3.8 Return to SET UP menu.
Step 4—Set the Time and Date

The time and date of recording is included with all pictures. To ensure that your pictures are stamped with the correct time and date, display the setup menu (18), then set the time and date as described below.

### 4.1
Highlight Date.

### 4.2
Display DATE menu.

### 4.3
Edit Year, Month, Day, Hour, Minute, and Second. Press multi selector left or right to select item, up or down to change.

### 4.4
Return to SET UP menu.

**The Clock Battery**

The clock-calendar is powered by a separate, non-rechargeable CR1616 lithium battery with a life of about four years. When this battery is exhausted, a **CLOCK** icon will be displayed in the top control panel while the exposure meters are on. For information on replacing the clock battery, see “Technical Notes: Caring for Your Camera” (239).

**CAUTION**

Use only CR1616 lithium batteries. Using another type of battery could cause an explosion. Dispose of used batteries as directed.
Introduction—First Steps

Step 5—Attach a Lens

Nikon recommends using a type G or type D CPU lens to take full advantage of the features the camera offers.

1. Turn the camera off
   Turn the camera off before attaching or removing lenses.

2. Attach a lens
   Keeping the mounting mark on the lens aligned with the mounting mark on the camera body, position the lens in the camera’s bayonet mount. Being careful not to press the lens-release button, rotate the lens counter-clockwise until it clicks into place.

3. Lock aperture at the minimum setting
   This step is not necessary if you are using a type G lens not equipped with an aperture ring. If you are using a lens of another type, lock aperture at the minimum setting (highest f/-number).
   
   If this step is omitted when attaching a CPU lens, the aperture displays in the control panel and viewfinder will show a blinking \textit{E} when the camera is turned on. Photographs can not be taken until the camera is turned off and aperture locked at the highest f/-number.
Protect the Camera from Dirt and Dust
Any dust, dirt, or other foreign matter inside your camera could show up as specks or blotches in your photographs or the viewfinder display. When no lens is in place, keep the lens mount covered with the supplied BF-1A body cap. When exchanging lens or replacing the body cap, keep the lens mount pointed down.

Detaching the Lens
Be sure the camera is off when removing or exchanging lenses. To remove the lens, press and hold the lens-release button while turning the lens clockwise.
Step 6—Insert a Memory Card

In place of film, the D2H uses CompactFlash memory cards or microdrive cards to store photographs. For a list of approved memory cards, see “Technical Notes: Approved Memory Cards” (236).

6.1 Turn the camera off
Turn the camera off before inserting or removing memory cards.

6.2 Open the card slot cover
Open the door protecting the card-slot cover release button (1) and press the release button (2) to open the card slot (3).

6.3 Insert a memory card
Insert the memory card with the rear label toward the monitor (1). When the memory card is fully inserted, the access lamp will light briefly and the eject button will pop up (2). Close the card slot cover.

**Inserting Memory Cards**
Insert the memory card terminals first. Inserting the card upside down or backwards could damage the camera or the card. Check to be sure that the card is in the correct orientation.

**No Memory Card**
If no memory card is inserted in the camera when a charged EN-EL4 battery is inserted or the camera is powered by an AC adapter, (–E–) will appear in the exposure-count displays in the control panel and viewfinder.
6.4 Format the memory card
Memory cards must be formatted before first use.

**Formatting Memory Cards**

*Formatting memory cards permanently deletes any data they may contain.* Be sure to copy any photographs and other data you wish to keep to a computer before proceeding (223–226).

To format the card, turn the camera on and hold the **FORMAT** ( MODE and WASTE) buttons down simultaneously for approximately two seconds. A blinking **For** will appear in the shutter-speed display and the frame count will blink. Pressing both buttons together a second time will format the memory card. Press any other button to exit without formatting.

![Formatting Memory Cards](image)

During formatting, the letters **For** will appear in the frame-count display. When formatting is complete, the frame-count display will show the number of photographs that can be recorded at current settings.

**During Formatting**

*Do not remove the card or battery or unplug the AC adapter (available separately) during formatting.*

---

**Format (207)**

Memory cards can also be formatted using the **Format** option in the setup menu.
Memory Cards

• Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
• Format memory cards before first use.
• Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or damage to the camera or card.
• Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
• Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
• Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
• Do not expose to water, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.

Removing Memory Cards

Memory cards can be removed without loss of data when the camera is off. Before removing the memory card, wait for the green card access lamp next to the card slot cover to go out and then turn the camera off. Do not attempt to remove the card while the access lamp is on. Failure to observe this precaution could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card. Open the door protecting the card-slot cover release button and press the release button to open the card slot, then press the eject button to partially eject the card (①). The card can then be removed by hand (②). Do not push on the memory card while pressing the eject button. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the memory card.
This chapter takes you step-by-step through the process of taking your first photographs and playing them back.

**Basic Photography**
This section describes how to use autofocus and programmed auto exposure for simple, “point-and-shoot” photography that will produce optimal results in most situations.

**Basic Playback**
Read this section for information on viewing photographs in the monitor.
There are six basic steps to taking photographs:

**STEP 1** Ready the Camera

To learn more about the battery level display, see:
- Introduction: First Steps .............................................. 15–24
To learn how to restore settings to their default values, see:
- Taking Photographs: Two-Button Reset ....................... 128

**STEP 2** Adjust Camera Settings

To learn more about the following camera settings, see:
- Taking Photographs: Choosing a Shooting Mode ............ 70–71
- Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size ............... 41–47
- Taking Photographs: Sensitivity (ISO Equivalency) ........ 48–50
- Taking Photographs: White Balance ............................ 51–64
- Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment ....................... 65–69
- Taking Photographs: Focus ....................................... 72–83
- Taking Photographs: Exposure ................................... 84–105

**STEP 3** Frame the Photograph

To learn how to preview the effects of aperture, see:
- Taking Photographs: Exposure ................................... 84–105
To learn about optional viewfinder accessories, see:
- Technical Notes: Optional Accessories ....................... 232

**STEP 4** Focus

To learn more about focus options, see:
- Taking Photographs: Focus ....................................... 72–83

**STEP 5** Check Exposure

To learn how to change the composition after setting exposure, see:
- Taking Photographs: Exposure ................................... 84–105
To learn more about flash photography, see:
- Taking Photographs: Flash Photography ...................... 106–117

**STEP 6** Take the Photograph

For information on time-lapse photography, see:
- Taking Photographs: Interval Timer Photography .......... 118–122
To learn how to delay shutter release, see:
- Taking Photographs: Self-Timer Mode ......................... 123
Step 1—Ready the Camera

Before taking photographs, ready the camera as described below.

1.1 Turn the camera on
The control panel will turn on and the display in the viewfinder will light.

1.2 Check the battery level
Check the battery level in the viewfinder or top control panel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon*</th>
<th>Control panel</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Battery fully charged</td>
<td>Aperture and shutter-speed indicators in top control panel and all indicators in viewfinder turn off if no operations are performed for 6 s (auto meter off). Press shutter-release button halfway to reactivate display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Battery partially discharged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Battery fully charged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Low battery</td>
<td>Ready fully-charged spare battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Battery exhausted</td>
<td>Shutter release disabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* No icon displayed when camera powered by optional AC adapter.

The Battery Indicator
If the segments in the control panel battery icon blink on and off, the camera is calculating the battery charge. The battery level will be displayed in about three seconds.

The 🚨 Icon
A flashing 🚨 icon in the control panel indicates that the battery has malfunctioned or is otherwise unsuitable for use in the D2H (the 🚨 icon in the viewfinder may also flash). Contact a Nikon-authorized service representative.
1.3 Check the number of exposures remaining

The exposure-count displays in the top control panel and viewfinder show the number of photographs that can be taken at current settings. When this number reaches zero, the icon will flash in the top control panel and a flashing icon will appear in the viewfinder. No further pictures can be taken until you delete pictures or insert a new memory card. You may be able to take additional pictures at lower image quality or size settings.
Step 2—Adjust Camera Settings

This tutorial describes how to take photographs at the default settings listed in the table below, using a type G or D lens. Information on when and how to change settings from their default values is provided in “Taking Photographs” (37).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Image quality</td>
<td>NORM (JPEG Normal)</td>
<td>Pictures are compressed for balance between image quality and file size that is ideal for snapshots.</td>
<td>41–44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image size</td>
<td>L (Large)</td>
<td>Images are 2,464 × 1,632 pixels in size.</td>
<td>44–45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Sensitivity (digital equivalent of film speed) set to value roughly equivalent to ISO 200.</td>
<td>48–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White balance</td>
<td>A (Auto)</td>
<td>White balance is adjusted automatically for natural colors under most types of lighting.</td>
<td>51–64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure mode</td>
<td>P (Programmed auto)</td>
<td>Built-in exposure program automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations.</td>
<td>85–93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus area</td>
<td>Center focus area</td>
<td>Camera focuses on subject in center focus area.</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.1 Set the shooting mode to single frame (70)

Hold the mode-dial lock release down (1) and turn the shooting mode dial (2) to S (single frame). At this setting, the camera will take one photograph each time the shutter-release button is pressed.
2.2 Choose single-area AF (76)
Rotate the AF-area mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to [ ] (single-area AF). At this setting, the user can choose from eleven focus areas. Pressing the shutter-release button halfway locks focus at the distance to the subject in the selected focus area.

2.3 Choose single-servo autofocus (72)
Rotate the focus-mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to S (single-servo autofocus). At this setting, the camera will automatically focus on the subject in the selected focus area when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Pictures can only be taken when the camera is in focus.

2.4 Choose matrix metering (84)
Press the metering selector lock button and rotate the metering selector to [ ] (matrix metering). Matrix metering uses information from all areas of the frame to determine exposure, ensuring optimal results for the entire frame. If a type G or D lens is mounted on the camera, 3D matrix metering is used for exposure control that takes into account maximum brightness, contrast, and the distance to the subject.

When matrix metering is selected, the metering display in the viewfinder shows [ ].
Step 3—Frame a Photograph

To prevent blurred photographs caused by unsteady hands (camera shake), hold the camera steadily in both hands, with your elbows propped lightly against your torso for support. Hold the handgrip in your right hand and cradle the camera body or lens with your left.

The recommended stance for taking photographs is with one foot a half pace in front of the other and your upper body stable.

Viewfinder Focus

The viewfinder is equipped with diopter adjustment to accommodate individual differences in vision. To adjust viewfinder focus, pull the diopter adjustment knob out (1) and rotate it until the viewfinder display and focus brackets are in sharp focus (2). When operating the diopter adjustment knob with your eye to the viewfinder, be careful not to put your fingers or fingernails in your eye.

Diopter can be adjusted in the range $-3 \text{ m}^{-1}$ to $+1 \text{ m}^{-1}$. Corrective lenses (available separately; 232) allow dioplers of $-6 \text{ m}^{-1}$ to $+3 \text{ m}^{-1}$.

Attaching Diopter Adjustment Viewfinder Lenses

Before attaching a diopter-adjustment viewfinder lens, remove the viewfinder eyepiece by closing the viewfinder shutter to release the eyepiece lock (1) and then unscrewing the eyepiece as shown at right (2).
**Step 4—Focus**

In single-servo AF, the camera focuses on the subject in the selected focus area when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. After centering the focus brackets on your subject, press the shutter-release button halfway and check focus in the viewfinder.

![Viewfinder display](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Viewfinder display</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>●</td>
<td>Subject in focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▲</td>
<td>Focus point is between camera and subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▼</td>
<td>Focus point is behind subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◀◀ (flashes)</td>
<td>Camera unable to focus on subject in focus brackets using autofocus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To focus on an off-center subject, use focus lock (80–81) or select the focus area containing your subject using the multi selector (74). For information on what to do if the camera is unable to focus using autofocus, see “Getting Good Results with Autofocus” (82).
Step 5—Check Exposure

In exposure mode P (programmed auto), the camera automatically sets shutter speed and aperture when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Before shooting, check the shutter-speed and aperture indicators in the viewfinder. If the photo would be under- or over-exposed at current settings, one of the following indicators will appear in either the shutter-speed or aperture display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>📸</td>
<td>Photo will be overexposed. Use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📸</td>
<td>Photo will be underexposed. Raise sensitivity (48–50) or use optional Speedlight (106).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shutter Speed and Camera Shake

To prevent blurring caused by camera shake, the shutter speed should be faster than the inverse of the focal length of the lens, in seconds (for example, if a lens has a focal length of 50mm, shutter speed should be faster than 1/60 s). Use of a tripod is recommended when shooting at slower shutter speeds. To prevent blur, try increasing sensitivity (48–50) or using a VR lens. An optional Speedlight (106) can be used to prevent blur at shutter speeds of 1/60 s or slower.
Step 6—Take the Photograph

Smoothly press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.

While the photograph is being recorded to the memory card after shooting, the access lamp next to the card slot cover will light. Do not eject the memory card, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source until the lamp has gone out. Removing the memory card or cutting power in these circumstances could result in loss of data.

Do Not Photograph Strong Light Sources

Avoid taking pictures with the camera focused on the sun or other strong light source. Intense light may cause deterioration in the LBCAST image sensor that the camera uses in place of film. It may also produce a white blur effect in the final photograph.

Image Review (159)

Photographs can be displayed at any time during or after recording by pressing the button. When On is selected for the Image review option in the playback menu, photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting.
Basic Playback

Viewing Photographs

To play photographs back, press the button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.

Viewing Additional Photographs

To page through photographs in the order recorded, press the multi selector down. Press the multi selector up to view photographs in reverse order. To scroll rapidly through the images on the memory card, press and hold the up or down buttons on the multi selector.

When the last photograph on the memory card is displayed, you can return to the first photograph by pressing the multi selector down. When the first photograph in memory is displayed, you can view the last photograph by pressing the multi selector up.

Deleting Unwanted Photographs

To delete the photograph currently displayed in the monitor, press the button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press the button again to delete the image and return to playback. To exit without deleting the picture, press the multi selector left or right.

Take Additional Photographs

To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the button or press the shutter-release button halfway.

Delete (148)

To delete multiple images, use the Delete option in the playback menu.
“Tutorial: Basic Photography” described the basic order of operations for taking photographs at the most commonly-used settings. This chapter explains how and when to adjust camera settings for different shooting conditions.
The chart below shows the basic order for adjusting settings when taking photographs. Before proceeding, be sure to read “Using Camera Menus” (39) for information on menu operations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How will this photograph be used?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Image Quality and Size: 41–47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Adjustment: 65–69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What lighting is available?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity (ISO Equivalency): 48–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Balance: 51–64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Will this be a single photo, or a series of photos?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Choosing a Shooting Mode: 70–71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What is the subject, and how will I compose the photography?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Focus: 72–83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How important is background lighting to the photograph?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exposure: Metering: 84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What is more important, shutter speed or aperture?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exposure: Exposure Mode: 85–94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is the subject very bright, very dark, or high contrast?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exposure: Exposure Compensation: 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure: Bracketing: 98–105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Will I need a flash?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flash Photography: 106–117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How do I want to control the shutter?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interval Timer Photography: 118–122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-Timer Mode: 123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The next four sections involve settings that can be accessed via the camera menus. To view the camera menus, press the **MENU** button.

### Choosing a Menu

The camera has four main menus: the playback menu, the shooting menu, the Custom Settings menu, and the setup menu. When the menu button is pressed, the camera displays the last menu used. To select a different menu:

1. **If menu item is highlighted, press **MENU** button.**

2. **Select menu.**

3. **Position cursor in selected menu.**
Making a Selection

To modify settings for an item in the current menu:

1. Highlight menu item.

2. Display options.

3. Highlight option.


• To return to the previous menu without making a selection, press the multi selector to the left.
• The selection for some options is made from a sub-menu. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to make a selection from a sub-menu.
• Some menu items are not available while images are being recorded to the memory card.
• Pressing the \button or the center of the multi selector performs the same function as pressing the multi selector to the right. In some cases, a selection can only be made using \button or the center of the multi selector.

Exiting the Menus

To exit the menus, press the \button (if a menu option is highlighted, press the \button twice). You can also exit the menus by pressing the \button to turn the monitor off or by turning the camera off. To exit the menus and focus the camera for the next shot, press the shutter-release button halfway.
Together, image quality and size determine how much space each photograph occupies on the memory card.

**Image Quality**

The D2H supports the following image quality options (listed in descending order by image quality and file size):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Fine</td>
<td>Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one fine-quality JPEG image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Normal</td>
<td>Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one normal-quality JPEG image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Basic</td>
<td>Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one basic-quality JPEG image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>Raw 12-bit data from the LBCAST image sensor are saved directly to the memory card in Nikon Electronic Image Format (NEF).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIFF (RGB)</td>
<td>Images are saved in uncompressed TIFF-RGB at a color depth of eight bits per channel (24-bit color).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Fine</td>
<td>Images are saved in JPEG format at a compression ratio of roughly 1:4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Normal</td>
<td>Images are saved in JPEG format at a compression ratio of roughly 1:8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Basic</td>
<td>Images are saved in JPEG format at a compression ratio of roughly 1:16.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEF (Raw)/NEF+JPEG**

File compression for NEF images is controlled from the Raw compression menu (44). The following options are available:

- **Comp. NEF (Raw):** NEF images are compressed using a “lossless” algorithm that reduces file size by approximately fifty to sixty percent without affecting image quality (46–47).
- **NEF (Raw):** NEF images are not compressed.

NEF images can only be viewed in the software provided with the camera or in Nikon Capture 4 (223). When photographs taken at NEF+JPEG Fine, NEF+JPEG Normal, or NEF+JPEG Basic are viewed on the camera, only the JPEG image will be displayed. When photographs taken at these settings are deleted, both NEF and JPEG images will be deleted.
Image quality can be set using the Image quality option in the shooting menu or by pressing the QUAL button and rotating the main command dial. When NEF (Raw) is selected, a compression option can be selected from the Raw compression menu.

**The Image Quality Menu**

1. Highlight Image quality in the shooting menu (167) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

**White Balance Bracketing**

White balance bracketing can not be used with NEF (RAW) images. Selecting an NEF (RAW) option for image quality cancels white balance bracketing. White balance for NEF (RAW) images can be adjusted using Nikon Capture 4 (available separately; 223).

**File Names**

Photographs are stored as image files with names of the form “DSC_nnnn.xxx,” where nnnn is a four-digit number between 0001 and 9999 assigned automatically in ascending order by the camera, and xxx is one of the following three letter extensions: “NEF” for NEF images, “TIF” for TIFF-RGB, “JPG” for JPEG images, and “NDF” for Dust Off ref photos (214–215). The NEF and JPEG files recorded at a setting of “NEF+JPEG” have the same file names but different extensions. Images recorded at a Color Mode setting of II (Adobe RGB) (67) have names that begin with an underbar (e.g., “_DSC0001.JPG”). The “DSC” portion of the file name can be changed using the File name option in the shooting menu (166).
**The QUAL Button**

Image quality can also be set by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the main command dial (note that NEF (RAW) compression can only be adjusted in the **Raw compression** menu). Image quality is displayed in the rear control panel and in the viewfinder sidebar:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Rear panel</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Fine</td>
<td>RAW+FINE</td>
<td>R F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Normal</td>
<td>RAW+ NORM</td>
<td>R N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Basic</td>
<td>RAW+ BASIC</td>
<td>R B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>RAW</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIFF (RGB)</td>
<td>TIFF</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Fine</td>
<td>FINE</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Normal</td>
<td>NORM</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Basic</td>
<td>BASIC</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Raw Compression Menu

The Raw compression menu controls whether NEF (RAW) images are compressed. The setting chosen in the Raw compression menu takes effect whenever image quality is set to NEF+JPEG Fine, NEF+JPEG Normal, NEF+JPEG Basic, or NEF (Raw). NEF compression can not be selected using the QUAL button and command dials.

1 Highlight Raw compression in the shooting menu (167) and press the multi selector to the right.

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

Image Size

Image size is measured in pixels. Smaller sizes produce smaller files, making them suited to distribution via e-mail or inclusion in web pages. Conversely, the larger the image, the larger the size at which it can be printed without becoming noticeably “grainy.” Choose image size according to the space available on the memory card and the task at hand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Size (pixels)</th>
<th>Size when printed at 200 dpi (approx.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L Large (2464×1632)</td>
<td>2,464×1,632</td>
<td>31.3×20.7 cm (12˝×8˝)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M Medium (1840×1224)</td>
<td>1,840×1,224</td>
<td>23.4×15.5 cm (9˝×6˝)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Image size can be set using the **Image size** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the sub-command dial. Note that the option selected does not affect the size of NEF (RAW) images. When opened in the software provided with the camera or in Nikon Capture 4, NEF images are $2,464 \times 1,632$ pixels in size.

**The Image Size Menu**

1. Highlight **Image size** in the shooting menu (167) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

**The QUAL Button**

Image size can also be set by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the sub-command dial. Image size is displayed in the rear control panel and in the viewfinder sidebar:
## Memory Card Capacity and Image Quality/Size

The following table shows the approximate number of pictures that can be stored on a 512 MB card at different image quality and size settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image quality</th>
<th>Raw compression</th>
<th>Image size</th>
<th>File size*</th>
<th>No. of Images*</th>
<th>Buffer capacity†</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Fine</td>
<td>Comp. NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>L‡</td>
<td>**</td>
<td>††</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M‡</td>
<td>**</td>
<td>††</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>L‡</td>
<td>7.9 MB</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M‡</td>
<td>7.1 MB</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Normal</td>
<td>Comp. NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>L‡</td>
<td>**</td>
<td>††</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M‡</td>
<td>**</td>
<td>††</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>L‡</td>
<td>6.6 MB</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M‡</td>
<td>6.1 MB</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF + JPEG Basic</td>
<td>Comp. NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>L‡</td>
<td>**</td>
<td>††</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M‡</td>
<td>**</td>
<td>††</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>L‡</td>
<td>6.5 MB</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M‡</td>
<td>6.3 MB</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (Raw)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>**</td>
<td>††</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIFF (RGB)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>11.5 MB</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6.5 MB</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Fine</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>1.9 MB</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1.1 MB</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Normal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.98 MB</td>
<td>433</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.56 MB</td>
<td>709</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Basic</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.49 MB</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.28 MB</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Taking Photographs—Image Quality and Size

* All figures are approximate. Size of JPEG files varies with scene recorded.
† Maximum number of frames that can be stored in memory buffer.
‡ Image size applies to JPEG images only. When opened in software provided with camera or in Nikon Capture 4, NEF images are $2,464 \times 1,632$ pixels in size.
**Total file size of NEF (RAW) and JPEG images. File size of compressed NEF (RAW) images is approximately fifty to sixty percent of uncompressed NEF images.
†† Number of exposures remaining shown in control and viewfinder is the same as in the case of uncompressed NEF (RAW) images. The actual number of images that can be stored on the memory card is higher than shown.
‡‡ File size of compressed NEF (RAW) images is approximately fifty to sixty percent of uncompressed NEF images.

Number of Exposures Remaining
The number of exposures remaining shown in the exposure count displays in the control panel and viewfinder is only an approximation. The number of compressed NEF or JPEG images that can be stored on a memory card depends on the subject and composition of each photograph. In general, the more detailed the image, the larger the resulting file and the fewer the images that can be stored.

Large-Capacity Memory Cards
When enough memory remains on the memory card to record a thousand or more pictures at current settings, the number of exposures remaining will be shown in thousands, rounded down to the nearest hundred (e.g., if there is room for approximately 1,260 exposures, the exposure count display will show 1.2 K).

d2—Maximum Shots (188)
In continuous mode, Custom Setting d2 (Maximum shots) can be used to limit the maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst to any amount between one and forty.
“Sensitivity” is the digital equivalent of film speed. The higher the sensitivity, the less light needed to make an exposure, allowing higher shutter speeds or smaller apertures.

Sensitivity can be set between values roughly equivalent to ISO 200 and ISO 1600 in steps equivalent to $\frac{1}{3}$ EV. Higher values of HI-1 (approximately equivalent to ISO 3200) and HI-2 (approximately equivalent to ISO 6400) are also available for situations in which high sensitivity is a priority. Sensitivity can be adjusted using the ISO option in the shooting menu or by pressing the ISO button and rotating the main command dial.

**The ISO Menu**

1. Highlight ISO in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

**HI-1/HI-2**

The higher the sensitivity, the more likely pictures are to be subject to “noise” in the form of randomly-spaced, brightly-colored pixels. Photos taken at settings of HI-1 and HI-2 will likely contain appreciable amounts of noise. Use only to capture natural lighting under low light conditions or when a fast shutter speed is required to prevent blurring. Nikon recommends that image sharpening (65) be turned off at these settings to avoid heightening the effects of noise.
**The ISO Button**

Sensitivity can also be set by pressing the ISO button and rotating the main command dial. Sensitivity is displayed in the control panels and viewfinder sidebar:

![ISO Button Diagram]

* Viewfinder display shows ISO 1.
† Viewfinder display shows ISO 2.

---

**b1—ISO Auto (182)**

When ON is selected for Custom Setting b1 (ISO Auto), the camera will automatically vary sensitivity from the value selected by the user to help ensure optimum exposure. Sensitivity can not be set to HI-1 or HI-2 while ISO Auto is on, and ON can not be selected for ISO Auto is when ISO is set to HI-1 or HI-2.

**d6—Control Panel/Viewfinder Display > Rear Control Panel (192)**

If Frame Count is selected for Control panel/viewfinder display > Rear control panel (Custom Setting d6), sensitivity will only be displayed in the rear control panel while the ISO button is pressed. If ISO is selected, sensitivity will be displayed except during voice memo recording and playback.
Depending on the option selected for Custom Setting b2, sensitivity can also be set in increments equivalent to ½ or 1 EV.

**ISO step value set to 1/2 step**

If possible, the current sensitivity setting is maintained when the step value is changed. If the current sensitivity setting is not available at the new step value, sensitivity will be rounded up to the nearest available setting.
White Balance

Keeping Colors True

The color of light reflected from an object varies with the color of the light source. The human brain is able to adapt to changes in the color of the light source, with the result that white objects appear white whether seen in the shade, direct sunlight, or under incandescent lighting. Unlike the film used in film cameras, digital cameras can mimic this adjustment by processing information from the 1,005-pixel RGB sensor, LBCAST image sensor, and ambient light sensor according to the color of the light source. This is known as “white balance.” For natural coloration, choose a white balance setting that matches the light source before shooting. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Approximate color temperature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>3,500–8,000 K</td>
<td>Color temperature measured using 1,005-pixel RGB sensor, LBCAST image sensor, and ambient light sensor and white balance adjusted automatically. For best results, use type G or D lens. With SB-800 Speedlight, white balance reflects conditions in effect when Speedlight fires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incandescent</td>
<td>3,000 K</td>
<td>Use under incandescent lighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
<td>4,200 K</td>
<td>Use under fluorescent lighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct sunlight</td>
<td>5,200 K</td>
<td>Use with subjects lit by direct sunlight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash</td>
<td>5,400 K</td>
<td>Use with Nikon Speedlights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloudy</td>
<td>6,000 K</td>
<td>Use in daylight under overcast skies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shade</td>
<td>8,000 K</td>
<td>Use in daylight with subjects in the shade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose color temp.</td>
<td>2,500–10,000 K</td>
<td>Choose color temperature from list of values (56).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White bal. preset</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Use subject, light source, or existing photograph as reference for white balance (57).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auto white balance is recommended with most light sources. If the desired results can not be achieved with auto white balance, choose an option from the list above or use preset white balance. In auto and preset modes, the camera uses “through-the-lens” (TTL) white balance measurement to ensure that white balance is set correctly even when the camera and subject are under different lighting.
White balance can be set using the **White bal.** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the main command dial.

**The White Balance Menu**

1. Highlight **White bal.** in the shooting menu (167) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. If **Choose color temp.** is selected, a menu of color temperatures will be displayed (56). If **White bal. preset** is selected, a menu of preset white balance options will be displayed (57). In all other cases, a white-balance fine-tuning dialog will be displayed (54).

**Studio Strobe Lighting**

Auto white balance may not produce the desired results with studio strobe lighting. Choose a color temperature, use preset white balance, or set white balance to **Flash** and use fine tuning to adjust white balance.

**Color Temperature**

The perceived color of a light source varies with the viewer and other conditions. Color temperature is an objective measure of the color of a light source, defined with reference to the temperature to which an object would have to be heated to radiate light in the same wavelengths. While light sources with a color temperature in the neighborhood of 5,000–5,500K appear white, light sources with a lower color temperature, such as incandescent light bulbs, appear slightly yellow or red. Light sources with a higher color temperature appear tinged with blue.
**The WB Button**

White balance can also be set by pressing the WB button and rotating the main command dial. White balance is displayed in the rear control panel and in the viewfinder sidebar:

When WB bracketing is selected for custom setting e5 (Auto BKT Set), the camera will create several images each time the shutter is released. White balance will be varied with each image, “bracketing” the value selected in the white balance menu or using the ISO button.
Fine-Tuning White Balance

At settings other than \textbf{K} (Choose color temp.) and \textbf{PRE} (preset), white balance can be “fine tuned” to compensate for variations in the color of the light source or to introduce a deliberate “warm” or “cold” cast into an image. Higher settings can be used to lend images a bluish tinge or to compensate for light sources with a yellow or red cast, while lowering white balance can make photographs appear slightly more yellow or red or compensate for light sources with a blue cast. Adjustments can be made in the range +3 to −3 in increments of one. Except in \textbf{Fluorescent} mode, each increment is equivalent to about 10 mired.

White balance is fine tuned using the \textbf{White bal.} option in the shooting menu or by pressing the \textbf{WB} button and rotating the sub-command dial.

The White Balance Menu

1. In the white balance menu (52), highlight an option other than \textbf{Choose color temp.} or \textbf{White bal. preset} and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Press the multi selector up or down to choose the desired value and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

\textbf{“Mired”}

Any given change in color temperature produces a greater difference in color at low color temperatures than it would at higher color temperatures. For example, a change of 100 K produces a much greater change in color at 3000 K than at 6000 K. Mired, calculated by multiplying the inverse of the color temperature by $10^6$, is a measure of color temperature that takes such variation into account, and as such is the unit used in color-temperature compensation filters. E.g.:
- $4000 \text{K} - 3000 \text{K}$ (a difference of 1000 K) = 83 mired
- $7000 \text{K} - 6000 \text{K}$ (a difference of 1000 K) = 24 mired
**The WB Button**

White balance can also be fine-tuned by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. White balance is displayed in the rear control panel; at settings other than ±0, a ⬤ icon appears in the rear control panel and in the viewfinder sidebar:

![Rear control panel](image1)

![Viewfinder](image2)

**Fine-Tuning and Color Temperature**

Approximate color-temperatures for settings other than A (auto) are given below (values may differ from color temperatures given by photo color meters):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Incandescent</th>
<th>Fluorescent*</th>
<th>Direct sunlight</th>
<th>Flash</th>
<th>Cloudy (daylight)</th>
<th>Shade (daylight)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+3</td>
<td>2,700 K</td>
<td>2,700 K</td>
<td>4,800 K</td>
<td>4,800 K</td>
<td>5,400 K</td>
<td>6,700 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+2</td>
<td>2,800 K</td>
<td>3,000 K</td>
<td>4,900 K</td>
<td>5,000 K</td>
<td>5,600 K</td>
<td>7,100 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1</td>
<td>2,900 K</td>
<td>3,700 K</td>
<td>5,000 K</td>
<td>5,200 K</td>
<td>5,800 K</td>
<td>7,500 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±0</td>
<td>3,000 K</td>
<td>4,200 K</td>
<td>5,200 K</td>
<td>5,400 K</td>
<td>6,000 K</td>
<td>8,000 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±1</td>
<td>3,100 K</td>
<td>5,000 K</td>
<td>5,300 K</td>
<td>5,600 K</td>
<td>6,200 K</td>
<td>8,400 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±2</td>
<td>3,200 K</td>
<td>6,500 K</td>
<td>5,400 K</td>
<td>5,800 K</td>
<td>6,400 K</td>
<td>8,800 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±3</td>
<td>3,300 K</td>
<td>7,200 K</td>
<td>5,600 K</td>
<td>6,000 K</td>
<td>6,600 K</td>
<td>9,200 K</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The size of the increments for Fluorescent reflects the wide variations in color temperature among the many different types of fluorescent light source, ranging from low-temperature stadium lighting to high-temperature mercury-vapor lamps.
Choosing a Color Temperature

Choose a setting of \( \text{K} \) (Choose color temp.) to select the color temperature from thirty-one predetermined values ranging from 2,500 K to 10,000 K in increments of roughly 10 mired (note that the desired results will not be obtained with flash or fluorescent lighting). Color temperature can be selected in the white-balance menu or with the \( \text{WB} \) button and sub-command dial.

The White Balance Menu

1. In the white balance menu (52), highlight an Choose color temp. and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired color temperature and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

The \( \text{WB} \) Button

At a setting of \( \text{K} \) (Choose color temp.), color temperature can be selected by pressing the \( \text{WB} \) button and rotating the sub-command dial. The color temperature is displayed in the rear control panel:

Take Test Shots

Take a test shot to determine if the selected value is appropriate to the light source.
Preset White Balance

Preset white balance is used to record and recall custom white balance settings for shooting under mixed lighting or to compensate for light sources with a strong color cast. Four options are available for setting preset white balance:

**Recording New Values with the Camera**
(1) Frame a neutral gray or white object and press the shutter-release button to measure a value for white balance (59).
(2) Measure white balance with the ambient light sensor (59).

**Copying Values from Existing Photographs**
(3) Copy white balance from another photograph on the memory card (63).
(4) Copy white balance from Nikon Capture 4 (available separately; 64).

The camera can store up to five values for preset white balance in presets d-0–d-4. White balance values recorded with options (1) and (2) are stored in preset d-0. To prevent this value from being replaced the next time white balance is measured, the value stored in d-0 can be copied to presets d-1–d-4 for long-term storage (64). White balance values copied using options (3) and (4) are also stored in presets d-1–d-4. A descriptive comment can be added to any white balance preset (62).

### White Balance Presets
Changes to white balance presets apply to all shooting menu banks (162). A confirmation dialog will be displayed if the user attempts to change a white balance preset created in another shooting menu bank (no warning is displayed for preset d-0).
Measuring a Value for White Balance

White balance can be measured with reference to a neutral gray object or by measuring the color of the light source. The new value for white balance is automatically stored in preset d-0.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neutral gray object</td>
<td>Neutral gray or white object is placed under lighting that will be used in final photograph and white balance is measured using camera’s 1,005-pixel RGB sensor. Use for flash photography or when the subject and camera are under different lighting. In studio settings, 18% diffusion panel can be used to make reference object appear gray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light source</td>
<td>Color of light source is measured by sensor on camera pentaprism and white balance adjusted to produce natural coloration without reference object. Use when subject is under same lighting as camera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Press the **WB** button and rotate the main command dial until **PRE** is displayed in the rear control panel or viewfinder sidebar.

   ![Rear control panel](image1)

   ![Viewfinder](image2)

   If the new value for preset white balance will be used immediately, select preset d-0 by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial until d-0 is displayed in the rear control panel (61). Otherwise there is no need to select d-0 when measuring a new value for white balance.
2 Release the **WB** button briefly and then press the button until the **PRE** icon in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar start to flash. A blinking **PRE** will also appear in the top control panel and viewfinder frame-count displays.

![Top control panel](image1)

![Rear control panel](image2)

![Viewfinder](image3)

3 To measure white balance using a neutral gray or white object…

…frame the reference object so that it fills the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button all the way down. The camera will measure a value for white balance and store it in preset d-0. No photograph will be recorded; white balance can be measured accurately even when the camera is not in focus.

To measure the color of the light source…

…make sure that the ambient light sensor is lit by the light source and press the **FUNC.** button. The camera will calculate a value for white balance and store it in preset d-0.

To exit without measuring a new value for white balance, press the **WB** button.

---

**Exposure Mode**

Preset white balance can be measured in all exposure modes. In all modes, exposure is automatically increased by one EV to ensure accurate results. In manual exposure mode, optimal results can be obtained by setting exposure to ±0 EV as indicated by the electronic analog exposure display.
If the camera was able to measure a value for white balance, \textit{Good} will flash for about three seconds in the control panels, while the viewfinder will show a flashing \textit{Gd}.

![Flash with Good and Gd]

Top control panel

Rear control panel

Viewfinder

If lighting is too dark or too bright, or if some types of artificial lighting are used when measuring white balance using the ambient light sensor, the camera may be unable to measure white balance. A flashing \textit{no Gd} will appear in the control panels and viewfinder for about three seconds. Return to Step 3 and measure white balance again. If the camera is unable to measure white balance using the ambient light sensor, try measuring white balance using a neutral gray or white reference object.

![Flash with no Gd]

Top control panel

Rear control panel

Viewfinder

The new value for white balance will be stored in preset d-0, automatically replacing the previous value for this preset (no confirmation dialog will be displayed). If white balance was set using a reference object, a thumbnail will be displayed in the preset white balance list. Presets measured using the ambient light sensor are marked by a \textbullet icon.

To use the new value for white balance, select preset d-0 (if no value has been measured for white balance before d-0 is selected, white balance will be set to a color temperature of 5,200 K, the same as \textbf{Direct sunlight}). The new white balance value will remain in preset d-0 until white balance is measured again. By copying preset d-0 to one of the other presets before measuring a new value for white balance, up to five white balance values can be stored (64).
Selecting a White Balance Preset
To set white balance to a preset value:

1 Highlight **White bal. preset** in the white balance menu (52) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed. (To return to the shooting menu, press the **MENU** button.)

2 Presets are identified by an icon or thumbnail, a name (d-0–d-4), and a comment. Press the multi selector up, down, left, or right to highlight the desired preset. To select the highlighted preset and return to shooting mode without completing steps 3–5, press the **SET** button.

3 Press the center of the multi selector to display the menu shown at right. To view options for other presets, highlight the name of the current preset (d-0–d-4) and press the multi selector right.

Selecting a White Balance Preset: the WB Button
At a setting of **PRE (White bal. preset)**, presets can also be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. The current preset is displayed in the rear control panel while the **WB** button is pressed.
4 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight Set.

5 Press the multi selector to the right to set white balance to the value stored in the selected preset and return to the shooting menu.

**Entering a Comment**

To enter a descriptive comment of up to thirty-six characters for a selected white balance preset, highlight the preset in the thumbnail display and press the center of the multi selector as described in steps 1–3 on the previous page. The menu shown at right will be displayed.

1 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Edit comment**.

2 Press the multi selector to the right to display the text edit dialog. Edit the comment as described on page 210.
Press the button to return to the thumbnail display.

**Copying White Balance from a Photograph (d-1 – d-4 Only)**

To copy a value for white balance from a photograph on the memory card to a selected preset (d-1 – d-4 only), highlight the preset in the thumbnail display and press the center of the multi selector as described in steps 1–3 on page 61. The menu shown at right will be displayed.

1. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Select image**.

2. Press the multi selector to the right to display the photographs on the memory card. Only photographs taken with the D2H will be displayed; other images can not be selected.

3. Press the multi selector up, down, left, or right to highlight the desired image. To view the highlighted image full frame, press the button. Press the button again to return to the thumbnail list.
4 Press the center of the multi selector to copy the white balance value for the highlighted photograph to the selected preset and return to the thumbnail display. If the highlighted photograph has a comment, the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.

**Copying White Balance from d-0 to Presets d-1—d-4**

To copy a measured value for white balance from d-0 to any of the other presets (d-1–d-4), highlight the destination preset in the thumbnail display and press the center of the multi selector as described in steps 1–3 on page 61. The menu shown at right will be displayed.

1 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Copy d-0**.

2 Press the multi selector to the right to copy white balance from d-0 to the selected preset and return to the thumbnail display. If comment has been created for d-0, the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.

**Nikon Capture 4**

Nikon Capture 4 (available separately) can be used to edit white balance when RAW photographs taken with the D2H are displayed on a computer. The edited value can be copied directly to a white balance preset while the camera is connected to a computer, or the image can be saved to the camera memory card and the white balance value copied using the **Select image** option in the preset menu. Any comments created with Nikon Capture 4 will also be copied to the comment for the selected preset.
This section describes settings that can only be adjusted from the shooting menu (161).

**Making Edges More Distinct: Image Sharpening**

When a photograph is taken, the camera automatically processes the image to increase the distinction between light and dark areas, making the picture appear sharper. The *Image sharpening* menu controls the amount of sharpening performed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Auto (default)</td>
<td>The camera automatically adjusts sharpening according to the subject and how other camera settings are adjusted. Amount of sharpening varies from shot to shot, even in scenes of same type; to take multiple shots with same sharpening, choose different setting. For best results, use a type G or D lens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◊ 0 Normal</td>
<td>Camera sharpens all images the same standard amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◊-2 Low</td>
<td>Images are sharpened less than the standard amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◊-1 Medium low</td>
<td>Images are sharpened slightly less than the standard amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◊+1 Medium high</td>
<td>Images are sharpened slightly more than the standard amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◊+2 High</td>
<td>Images are sharpened more than the standard amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◊ None</td>
<td>Images are not sharpened.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Highlight *Image sharpening* in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.
### Adjusting Contrast: Tone Compensation

As photographs are saved to the memory card, they are processed to adjust the distribution of tones in the image, enhancing contrast. Tone compensation is performed by means of tone curves that define the relationship between the distribution of tones in the original image and the compensated result. The **Tone compensation** menu controls the type of curve used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong> Auto (default)</td>
<td>Camera automatically optimizes contrast by selecting the appropriate curve. Curve varies from shot to shot, even in scenes of same type; to take multiple shots with same curve, choose different setting. For best results, use a type G or D lens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>0</strong> Normal</td>
<td>Camera uses same standard curve for all images. Suited to most scenes, whether dark or bright.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>0</strong> Less contrast</td>
<td>Produces “softer” images. Prevents highlights on portrait subjects from being “washed out” in direct sunlight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>0</strong> More contrast</td>
<td>Choose this curve to preserve detail in misty landscapes and other low-contrast subjects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>0</strong> Custom</td>
<td>Nikon Capture 4 (available separately) can be used to define a custom tone curve and download it to the camera. Choose <strong>Custom</strong> to select this user-defined curve. If no custom curve has been created, this option is equivalent to <strong>Normal</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Highlight **Tone compensation** in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.
Suiting Colors to a Workflow: Color Mode

The D2H offers a choice of color modes, which determine the gamut of colors available for color reproduction. Choose a color mode according to how photographs will be processed on leaving the camera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I (sRGB) (default)</td>
<td>Choose for portrait shots that will be printed or used “as is,” with no further modification. Photographs are adapted to the sRGB color space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II (Adobe RGB)</td>
<td>Photographs taken at this setting are adapted to the Adobe RGB color space. This color space is capable of expressing a wider gamut of colors than sRGB, making it the preferred choice for images that will be extensively processed or retouched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III (sRGB)</td>
<td>Choose for nature or landscape shots that will be printed or used “as is,” with no further modification. Photographs are adapted to the sRGB color space.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Color Mode

Modes I and III are recommended when taking photographs that will be printed without modification or viewed in applications that do not support color management. Modes I and III are also recommended when taking photographs that will be printed with ExifPrint, the direct printing option on some household printers, or kiosk printing or other commercial print services. Photographs taken in Mode II can also be printed using these options, but colors will not be as vivid.

JPEG photographs taken in Mode II are Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 compliant; applications and printers that support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 will select the correct color space automatically. If the application or device does not support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0, select the Adobe RGB color space. An ICC color profile is embedded in TIFF photographs taken in Mode II, allowing applications that support color management to automatically select the correct color space. For more information, see the documentation provided with the application or device.

🔍 Nikon Software

When photographs created with the D2H are opened in the software provided with the camera or in Nikon Capture 4, the appropriate color space will be selected automatically.
1 Highlight **Color mode** in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right.

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.
Controlling Color: Hue Adjustment

Hue can be adjusted in the range about –9° to +9° in increments of 3°. If red is taken as the starting color, raising hue above 0° (the default setting) would introduce a yellow cast, making colors that would be red at a setting of 0° appear increasingly orange. Lowering hue below 0° would introduce a blue cast, making colors that would be red at a setting of 0° appear increasingly purple.

1. Highlight **Hue adjustment** in the shooting menu (169) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

**Hue**

The RGB color model used in digital photographs reproduces colors using differing amounts of red, green, and blue light. By mixing two colors of light, a variety of different colors can be produced. For example, red combined with a small amount of green light produces orange. If red and green are mixed in equal amounts, yellow results, while a smaller amount of red produces a yellow green. Mixing different amounts of red and blue light produces colors ranging from a reddish purple through purple to navy, while mixing different amounts of green and blue light produces colors ranging from emerald to turquoise. (Adding a third color of light results in lighter hues; if all three mixed in equal amounts, the results range from white through gray.) When this progression of hues is arranged in a circle, the result is known as a color wheel.
Choosing a Shooting Mode

Single Frame, Continuous, Self-Timer, or Mirror Up

Shooting mode determines how the camera takes photographs: one at a time, in a continuous sequence, with a timed shutter-release delay, or with the mirror raised to enhance shutter response and minimize vibration.

To choose a shooting mode, press the mode dial lock release and turn the mode dial to the desired setting. The following modes are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td>Single frame. Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed. Access lamp will light while photo is recorded; next shot can be taken immediately if enough space remains in memory buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CL</strong></td>
<td>Continuous low speed. Camera records from one to seven frames per second* while the shutter-release button is held down. Frame rate can be chosen using Custom Setting d1 (Shooting Speed; 188).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CH</strong></td>
<td>Continuous high speed. While the shutter-release button is held down, camera records up to eight frames per second (seven frames per second when ISO auto is on and sensitivity is altered from value selected by user).*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Self</strong></td>
<td>Self-timer Use the self-timer for self-portraits or to reduce blurring caused by camera shake (123).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M-up</strong></td>
<td>Mirror up. Press shutter-release button once to raise mirror, again to take photograph (shutter will be released automatically if shutter-release button is not pressed for 30s after mirror up). Mirror will be lowered after photo is taken. Choose this mode to reduce release lag in situations in which timing is paramount, or to minimize camera shake in situations in which the least camera movement can result in blurred photographs. Note that autofocus, metering, and framing can not be confirmed in the viewfinder while mirror is raised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Average frame rate with continuous-servo AF, manual or shutter-priority auto exposure, a shutter speed of ½s or faster, and memory remaining in memory buffer. Buffer can hold up to 24 compressed NEF+JPEG images, 25 uncompressed NEF+JPEG images, 25 compressed NEF (RAW) images, 26 uncompressed NEF (RAW) images, 35 TIFF (RGB) images, or 40 JPEG images. When noise reduction is on, buffer can hold up to 14 compressed NEF+JPEG images, 15 uncompressed NEF+JPEG images, 15 compressed NEF (RAW) images, 16 uncompressed NEF (RAW) images, 15 TIFF (RGB) images, or 30 JPEG images. Additional photographs can be taken as soon as enough memory is available in buffer.
The Memory Buffer
The camera is equipped with a memory buffer for temporary storage, allowing shooting to continue while photographs are being saved to the memory card. When the buffer is full, the shutter is disabled until enough data have been transferred to the memory card to make room for another photograph. In continuous mode, shooting will continue as long as the shutter-release button is held down, although the frame rate will drop once the buffer has filled.

While photographs are being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the memory card slot will light. Depending on the number of the images in the buffer, recording may take from a few seconds to a few minutes. Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until the access lamp has gone out. If the camera is switched off while data remain in the buffer, the power will not turn off until all images in the buffer have been recorded to the memory card. To turn the camera off without recording the images in the buffer, press the button while turning the camera off (keep the button pressed for at least one second after turning the camera off). If the battery is exhausted while images remain in the buffer, the shutter release will be disabled and all images will be transferred to the memory card.

The approximate time required to write the entire buffer to a 512 MB Lexar Media 24 x WA USB card is as follows (where applicable, all times are for large images):
- Compressed NEF (RAW) + JPEG Basic: 32 s (24 frames)
- Compressed NEF (RAW): 26 s (25 frames)
- TIFF RGB: 420 s (35 frames)
- JPEG Fine: 26 s (40 frames)

Buffer Size
The number of images that can be stored in the memory buffer at current settings is shown in the exposure-count displays in the viewfinder and top control panel while the shutter-release button is pressed.

d2—Maximum Shots
In continuous mode, Custom Setting d2 (Maximum shots) can be used to limit the maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst to any amount between one and forty.
This section describes the options that control how your camera focuses: focus mode, focus-area selection, and AF-area mode.

**Focus Mode**

Focus mode is controlled by the focus mode selector on the front of the camera. There are two *autofocus* (AF) modes, in which the camera focuses automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, and one *manual* focus mode, in which focus must be adjusted manually using the focusing ring on the lens:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong> Single-servo AF</td>
<td>Camera focuses when shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Focus locks when in-focus indicator (●) appears in viewfinder, and remains locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway (<em>focus lock</em>). Shutter can only be released when in-focus indicator is displayed (<em>focus priority</em>). If subject was moving when shutter-release button was pressed halfway, camera will track subject until focusing is complete and the shutter can be released (<em>predictive focus tracking</em>; 73). If subject stops moving before shutter is released, in-focus indicator will appear in viewfinder and focus will lock at this distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C</strong> Continuous-servo AF</td>
<td>Camera focuses continuously while shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If subject moves, focus will be adjusted to compensate (<em>predictive focus tracking</em>; 73). Photographs can be taken whether or not camera is in focus (<em>release priority</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong> Manual</td>
<td>Camera does not focus automatically; focus must be adjusted manually using the lens focusing ring. If maximum aperture of lens is f/5.6 or faster, viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm focus (<em>electronic range finding</em>), but photographs can be taken at any time, whether or not camera is in focus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choosing single-servo AF ensures a sharp, focused image. Continuous-servo AF may be a better choice with erratically-moving subjects. Manual focus is recommended when the camera is unable to focus using autofocus.
The AF-ON Buttons
For the purpose of focusing the camera, pressing either of the AF-ON buttons has the same effect as pressing the shutter-release button halfway (the AF-ON button for vertical shooting can only be used when the shutter-release button for vertical shooting is unlocked).

Predictive Focus Tracking
If the camera autofocus system detects that the subject is moving when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, it will automatically initiate predictive focus tracking. If the subject is moving toward or away from the camera, the camera will track focus while attempting to predict where the subject will be when the shutter is released. In single-servo autofocus, the camera will initiate predictive focus tracking if the subject was moving when the shutter-release button was pressed halfway. Focus will lock when the subject stops moving. In continuous-servo AF, the camera will also initiate predictive focus tracking if the subject starts moving after the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Focus will not lock when the subject stops moving.

Predictive focus tracking is not available in manual focus mode.

a1—AF-C Mode Priority (176)
If Focus is selected for Custom Setting a1 (AF-C mode priority), photographs can be taken in continuous servo-AF only when the camera is in focus. Select FPS rate + AF for improved focus during continuous shooting.

a2—AF-S Mode Priority (176)
If Release is selected for Custom Setting a2 (AF-S mode priority), photographs can be taken in single servo-AF even when the camera is not in focus.

a5—AF Activation (179)
If AF-ON only is selected for Custom Setting a5 (AF activation), the camera will only focus when one of the AF-ON buttons is pressed, not when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

a8—Vertical AF-ON (182)
Custom Setting a8 (Vertical AF-ON) controls whether the AF-ON button for vertical shooting is used to initiate autofocus, select the focus area, or both.
**Focus Area Selection**

The D2H offers a choice of eleven focus areas that together cover a wide area of the frame. The focus area can be selected manually, allowing photographs to be composed the main subject positioned almost anywhere in the frame, or automatically to ensure that the subject closest to the camera is always in focus regardless of where it is the frame (closest-subject priority; [76]). Group dynamic-AF can be used to focus on the closest subject in a selected area of the frame ([76]).

To select the focus area, rotate the focus selector lock. The multi selector can then be used to select the focus area. The selected focus area is displayed in the top control panel and is highlighted briefly in the viewfinder.

To select the center focus area or (focus area group) at any time, press the center of the multi selector.

The focus selector lock can be rotated to the locked position following selection to prevent the selected focus area from changing when the multi selector is pressed.

---

**Focus Area Selection**

The focus area can not be changed during playback or while menus are displayed.

74
Focus Area Selection for Portrait (Tall) Orientation Photographs

If the shutter-release button for vertical shooting is unlocked, the focus area can also be selected by pressing the AF-ON button for vertical shooting and rotating the sub-command dial for vertical shooting. The selected focus area is displayed in the top control panel and is highlighted briefly in the viewfinder.

Rotate the sub-command dial clockwise to cycle endlessly through focus areas in the order shown at right, counter-clockwise to cycle through focus areas in the reverse order.

- **a6—Focus Area Illum (180)**
  Custom Setting a6 (Focus area Illum) controls how long the focus area is illuminated in the viewfinder after selection and whether focus areas are displayed in manual focus mode or continuous shooting mode.

- **a7—Focus Area (181)**
  This option can be used to set focus area selection to “wrap around.”

- **a8—Vertical AF-ON (182)**
  Custom Setting a8 (Vertical AF-ON) controls whether the AF-ON button for vertical shooting is used to initiate autofocus, select the focus area, or both.

- **f1—Center Button > Shooting Mode (198)**
  Depending on the option selected for Center button > Shooting mode (Custom Setting f1), pressing the center of the multi selector will have no effect or will illuminate the selected focus area.
Autofocus

When the focus mode selector is set to S (single-servo autofocus) or C (continuous-servo autofocus), the camera focuses automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. This section describes focus options that are only available in single- and continuous-servo AF.

AF-Area Mode

AF-area mode determines how the focus area is selected and what happens if the subject moves out of the selected focus area while the camera is still focusing. To select the AF-area mode, rotate the AF-area mode selector. The selected mode is shown by an icon in the top control panel. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ ] Single-area AF</td>
<td>![icon]</td>
<td>User selects focus area manually; camera focuses on subject in selected focus area only. Use for relatively static compositions with subjects that will stay in selected focus area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ] Dynamic-area AF</td>
<td>![icon]</td>
<td>User selects focus area manually, but camera uses information from multiple focus areas to determine focus. If the subject leaves selected focus area even briefly, camera will still be able to focus based on information from other focus areas (focus area selected in viewfinder does not change). Use when following erratically moving subjects and in other situations in which it is difficult to keep subject in selected focus area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ] Group dynamic-AF</td>
<td>![icon]</td>
<td>User chooses group of focus areas in top, left, center, right, or bottom area of frame (see right); from this group, camera automatically selects focus area containing subject closest to camera. Use when subject is moving erratically but place of subject in overall composition is known.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![icon]
## Taking Photographs—Focus

### Mode Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority</td>
<td><img src="icon.png" alt="Dynamic-area AF icon" /></td>
<td>Camera automatically selects focus area containing subject closest to camera. Prevents out-of-focus shots when photographing erratically moving subjects. Focus area can not be selected manually, and focus areas are not displayed in viewfinder or top control panel. Camera may be unable to select focus area containing closest subject when telephoto lens is used or subject is poorly lit. Single-area AF is recommended in these cases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Manual Focus

Single-area AF is automatically selected when manual focus is used.

### The Top Control Panel

The selected focus area or group of focus areas is shown in the top control panel in single-area AF, dynamic-area AF, and group dynamic-AF. The illustrations in the “Icon” column show the display when the center focus area or focus area group is selected. The top control panel display does not show the focus area selected by the camera for group dynamic-AF or dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority.

#### a1—AF-C Mode Priority (**176**)

In focus mode C (continuous-servo autofocus) photographs can be taken even when the camera is not in focus (release priority). To ensure that the camera is in focus when the picture is taken, choose Focus for Custom Setting a1 (AF-C mode priority). Select FPS rate + AF for improved focus during continuous shooting.

#### a2—AF-S Mode Priority (**176**)

In focus mode S (single-servo autofocus) photographs can be taken only when the camera is in focus (focus priority). To allow photographs to be taken regardless of whether or not the camera is in focus, choose Release for Custom Setting a2 (AF-S mode priority).

#### a3—Group Dynamic AF (**177**)

This option controls how focus areas are grouped in group dynamic-AF mode and whether the camera tracks the subject in the center focus area of the selected group.

#### a4—Disable Lock-On (**179**)

This option controls whether the camera immediately adjusts focus to track a subject when the distance to the subject changes drastically.
### Summary of Autofocus Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Focus mode</th>
<th>AF-area mode</th>
<th>Control-panel display</th>
<th>Active focus area</th>
<th>Focus-area selection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-S</strong></td>
<td>Single-area AF</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Single-area AF Icon" /></td>
<td>Shown in viewfinder</td>
<td>Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic-area AF</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Dynamic-area AF Icon" /></td>
<td>Shown in viewfinder</td>
<td>Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group dynamic-AF</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Group dynamic-AF Icon" /></td>
<td>Shown in viewfinder</td>
<td>Camera automatically selects focus area from within manually selected group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic-area AF with closest-subject priority</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Dynamic-area AF with closest-subject priority Icon" /></td>
<td>Not shown</td>
<td>Automatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-C</strong></td>
<td>Single-area AF</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Single-area AF Icon" /></td>
<td>Shown in viewfinder</td>
<td>Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic-area AF</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Dynamic-area AF Icon" /></td>
<td>Shown in viewfinder</td>
<td>Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group dynamic-AF</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Group dynamic-AF Icon" /></td>
<td>Shown in viewfinder</td>
<td>Camera automatically selects focus area from within manually selected group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic-area AF with closest-subject priority</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Dynamic-area AF with closest-subject priority Icon" /></td>
<td>Not shown</td>
<td>Automatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How it works</td>
<td>When to use it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera focuses on subject in selected focus area. Focus will remain locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.</td>
<td>Use with static subjects when time is available to compose photo.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera focuses on subject in selected focus area. If subject moves before camera has focused, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas. Focus will remain locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.</td>
<td>Use with static subjects when time is available to compose photo.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As above, except camera automatically selects focus area containing subject closest to camera from group of focus areas selected by user.</td>
<td>Use when sure of subject’s place in overall composition but unsure of its exact position.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As above, except that focus area containing subject closest to camera is selected from all eleven focus areas.</td>
<td>Use when sure that subject will be closest object to camera but unsure where it will appear in final composition.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera continues to focus on subject in selected focus area while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.</td>
<td>Use with moving subjects that can be continuously framed in single focus area.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera focuses on subject in selected focus area. While shutter-release button is pressed halfway, camera tracks subject as it moves from one focus area to the next.</td>
<td>Use with subjects that are moving unpredictably.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As above, except camera automatically selects focus area containing subject closest to camera from group of focus areas selected by user.</td>
<td>Use when sure of moving subject’s place in overall composition but unsure of its exact position.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As above, except that focus area containing subject closest to camera is selected from all eleven focus areas.</td>
<td>Use with erratically moving subjects when you know subject will be closest object to camera.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Focus Lock

Focus lock can be used to change the composition after focusing, making it possible to focus on a subject that will not be in one of the eleven focus areas in the final composition. It can also be used when the autofocus system is unable to focus (page 82).

In single-servo AF, focus locks automatically when the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder. In continuous-servo AF, focus must be locked manually using the AE-L/AF-L button. To recompose a photograph using focus lock:

1. Position the subject in the selected focus area and press the shutter-release button halfway to initiate focus.

2. Check that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.

**Single-servo AF**

Focus will lock automatically when the in-focus indicator appears, and remain locked until you remove your finger from the shutter-release button. Focus can also be locked by pressing the AE-L/AF-L button (see below).

**Continuous-servo AF**

Press the AE-L/AF-L button to lock both focus and exposure. Focus will remain locked while the AE-L/AF-L button is pressed, even if you later remove your finger from the shutter-release button.
3 Recompose the photograph and shoot.

In single-servo AF, focus will remain locked between shots as long as the shutter-release button is kept pressed halfway, allowing several photographs in succession to be taken at the same focus setting. Focus will also remain locked between shots while the AE-L/AF-L button is pressed.

Do not change the distance between the camera and the subject while focus lock is in effect. If the subject moves, focus again at the new distance.

This option controls whether the AE-L/AF-L button locks focus and exposure (the default setting), focus only, or exposure only.
Getting Good Results with Autofocus

Autofocus does not perform well under the conditions listed below. If the camera is unable to focus using autofocus, use manual focus (page 83) or use focus lock (page 80) to focus on another subject at the same distance and then recompose the photograph.

There is little or no contrast between the subject and the background

Example: subject is the same color as the background.

The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns

Example: a row of windows in a skyscraper.

The subject appears smaller than the focus area

Example: focus area contains both foreground subject and distant buildings.

The focus area contains objects at different distances from the camera

Example: subject is inside a cage.

The focus area contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness

Example: subject is half in the shade.

The subject many contains fine details

Example: a field of flowers or other subjects that are small or lack variation in brightness.

AF-Assist Illuminators

If the subject is dark, a Speedlight with an AF-assist illuminator can be used to assist the autofocus.
Manual Focus

Manual focus is available for lenses that do not support autofocus (non-AF Nikkor lenses) or when the autofocus does not produce the desired results (82). To focus manually, set the focus-mode selector to M and adjust the lens focusing ring until the image displayed on the clear matte field in the viewfinder is in focus. Photographs can be taken at any time, even when the image is not in focus.

The Electronic Range Finder

If the lens has a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster, the viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm whether the subject in the selected focus area is in focus. After positioning the subject in the active focus area, press the shutter-release button halfway and rotate the lens focusing ring until the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

A-M Selection/Autofocus with Manual Priority

When using a lens that offers A-M selection, select M when focusing manually. With lenses that support M/A (autofocus with manual priority), focus can be adjusted manually with the lens set to M or M/A. See the documentation provided with your lens for details.

Focal Plane Position

To determine the distance between your subject and the camera, measure from the focal plane mark on the camera body. The distance between the lens mounting flange and the focal plane is 46.5 mm (1.83").
## Metering

### Controlling How the Camera Sets Exposure

Three metering methods are available to determine how the camera sets exposure. Before shooting, press the metering selector lock button and rotate the metering selector to choose a method suited to the composition and lighting conditions, and confirm your selection in the viewfinder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3D color matrix/Color matrix</td>
<td>Metering is performed by 1,005-pixel RGB sensor, which sets exposure based on variety of information from all areas of frame. This system demonstrates its effectiveness most dramatically where bright (white or yellow) or dark (black or dark green) colors occupy large area of frame, when its results approach what is seen by human eyes. <strong>3D color matrix metering</strong>, which uses range information from lens in adjusting exposure, is available only with type G or D lenses. <strong>Color matrix metering</strong>, which does not include range information, is available with other CPU lenses or when focal length and maximum aperture of non-CPU lens are specified using <strong>Non-CPU lens data</strong> item in shooting menu (124); center-weighted metering is used if focal length or aperture is not specified). Matrix metering will not produce desired results with autoexposure lock (95) or exposure compensation (97), but is recommended in most other situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center-weighted</td>
<td>Camera meters entire frame but assigns greatest weight to area in center of frame 8 mm (0.31”) in diameter, shown by corresponding 8-mm reference circle in viewfinder. Classic meter for portraits; recommended when using filters with an exposure factor (filter factor) over 1 × (233).*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot</td>
<td>Camera meters circle 3 mm (0.12”) in diameter (approximately 2% of frame). Circle is centered on current focus area (in group dynamic AF, on center focus area of current group; 76), making it possible to meter off-center subjects (if non-CPU lens is used or if dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority is in effect, camera will meter center focus area). Ensures that subject will be correctly exposed, even when background is much brighter or darker.*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For improved precision with non-CPU lenses, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture in **Non-CPU lens data** menu (124).

### b6—Center Weight (185)

This option controls the size of the area assigned the greatest weight in center-weighted metering.
Exposure Mode
Exposure mode determines how the camera sets shutter speed and aperture when adjusting exposure. Four modes are available: programmed auto (P), shutter-priority auto (S), aperture-priority auto (A), and manual (M).

CPU Lenses
When using a CPU lens equipped with an aperture ring, lock the aperture ring at the minimum aperture (highest f/-number). At other settings, the shutter release will be disabled and a blinking ISO-A will appear in the aperture displays in the top control panel and viewfinder. Type G lenses are not equipped with an aperture ring.

Depth-of-Field Preview
To preview the effects of aperture, press and hold the depth-of-field preview button. The lens will be stopped down to the aperture value selected by the camera in programmed auto or shutter-priority auto, or the value chosen by the user in aperture-priority auto or manual exposure mode, allowing depth of field to be previewed in the viewfinder (if the optional SB-800 Speedlight is attached, a modeling flash will be emitted).

b1—ISO Auto (182)
When On is selected for Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto), the camera automatically varies sensitivity in the range 200–1600 (ISO equivalent) to help ensure optimum exposure when the limits of the camera exposure metering system are exceeded (exposure modes P, S, and A) or optimum exposure can not be achieved at the shutter-speed and aperture selected by the user (exposure mode M). When sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user, ISO-AUTO will flash in the rear control panel and a flashing ISO-A will be displayed in the viewfinder. In the camera photo information display for pictures taken at altered sensitivities, the ISO value will also be displayed in red. Note that noise is more likely to appear in photographs taken at higher sensitivities.

On can not be selected for ISO auto when sensitivity is set to HI-1 or HI-2; similarly, HI-1 or HI-2 can not be selected when ISO Auto is on. If a flash is used when ISO auto is on, ISO will be fixed at the value selected by the user. If ISO auto is on when autoexposure bracketing is selected in exposure mode M, sensitivity will vary around the value selected by the user as required by the bracketing program.

e4—Modeling Flash (195)
If Off is selected for Custom Setting e4 (Modeling flash), the optional SB-800 will not emit a modeling flash when the depth-of-field preview button is pressed.
**P: Programmed Auto**

In this mode, the camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture according to a built-in program (see below) for optimal exposure in most situations. This mode is recommended for snapshots and other situations in which you want to leave the camera in charge of shutter speed and aperture. Adjustments can be made using flexible program, exposure compensation ([97](#)), and auto exposure bracketing ([98](#)). Programmed auto is only available with CPU lenses.

To take photographs in programmed auto:

1. Press the **MODE** button and rotate the main command dial until **P** is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

2. Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

---

**Non-CPU Lenses**

Exposure mode **A** (aperture-priority auto) is automatically selected when a non-CPU lens is attached. The exposure mode indicator (**P**) in the top control panel will blink and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder. For more information, see “Aperture-Priority Auto” ([90](#)).

**Exposure Warning**

If the limits of the exposure metering system are exceeded, one of the following indicators will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Hi]</td>
<td>Subject too bright. Use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter or lower sensitivity (ISO equivalency; <a href="#">48</a>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Lo]</td>
<td>Subject too dark. Use optional Speedlight or raise sensitivity (ISO equivalency; <a href="#">48</a>).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Flexible Program**

In programmed auto, different combinations of shutter speed and aperture can be selected by rotating the main command dial (“flexible program”). All combinations produce the same exposure. While flexible program is in effect, an asterisk (“*”) appears next to the exposure-mode indicator in the top control panel. To restore default shutter speed and aperture settings, rotate the main command dial until the indicator is no longer displayed. Default settings can also be restored by turning the camera off, selecting another exposure mode, performing a two-button reset (128), or choosing another setting for Custom Setting b3 (EV step; 184).

**Exposure Program**

The exposure program for programmed auto is shown in the following graph:

ISO 200; lens with maximum aperture of f/1.4 and minimum aperture of f/16 (e.g., AF 50 mm f/1.4 D)

The maximum and minimum values for EV vary with sensitivity (ISO equivalency); the above graph assumes a sensitivity of ISO 200 equivalent. When matrix metering is used, values over 17½ EV are reduced to 17½ EV.
S: Shutter-Priority Auto

In shutter-priority auto, you choose the shutter speed while the camera automatically selects the aperture that will produce the optimal exposure. Shutter speed can be set to values between 30s and 1/8000s. Use slow shutter speeds to suggest motion by blurring moving objects, high shutter speeds to “freeze” motion. Shutter-priority auto is only available with CPU lenses.

To take photographs in shutter-priority auto:

1. Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until S is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

2. Rotate the main command dial to choose the desired shutter speed.

3. Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.
**Non-CPU Lenses**
Exposure mode **A** (aperture-priority auto) is automatically selected when a non-CPU lens is attached. The exposure mode indicator (§) in the top control panel will blink and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder. For more information, see “Aperture-Priority Auto” (90).

**Changing from Manual to Shutter-Priority Auto**
If you select a shutter speed of **bulb** in manual exposure mode and then select shutter-priority auto without changing the shutter speed, the **bulb** indicator in the shutter-speed display will flash and the shutter can not be released. Rotate the main command dial to select a different shutter speed before shooting.

**Exposure Warning**
If the camera is unable to produce the correct exposure at the selected shutter speed, the electronic analog exposure display (93) in the viewfinder will show the amount of under- or over-exposure and one of the following indicators will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder aperture displays:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Hi]</td>
<td>Subject too bright. Choose faster shutter speed or lower sensitivity (ISO equivalency; 48), or use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Lo]</td>
<td>Subject too dark. Choose slower shutter speed or higher sensitivity (ISO equivalency; 48), or use optional Speedlight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Shutter-Speed Lock**
Shutter speed can be locked at the selected setting (94).

**b3**—**EV Step** (184)
This option controls whether changes to shutter speed and aperture are made in increments equivalent to ⅓ EV (the default setting), ½ EV, or 1 EV.

**d4**—**Long Exp. NR** (190)
To reduce noise at shutter speeds of about ½s or slower, select **On** for Custom Setting d4. Note that this will increase the time needed to process photographs before they are saved to the memory card.

**f5**—**Command Dials > Change Main/Sub** (202)
This option can be used to reverse the roles of the command dials so that the sub-command dial controls shutter speed, while the main command dial controls aperture.
A: Aperture-Priority Auto

In aperture-priority auto, you choose the aperture while the camera automatically selects the shutter speed that will produce the optimal exposure. Small apertures (high f/-numbers) increase depth of field, bringing both the main subject and background into focus. Large apertures (low f/-numbers) soften background details and let more light into the camera, increasing the range of the flash and making photographs less susceptible to blurring.

To take photographs in aperture-priority auto:

1. Press the **MODE** button and rotate the main command dial until **A** is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

2. Rotate the sub-command dial to choose the desired aperture.

3. Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.
Non-CPU Lenses

If the maximum aperture of the lens has been specified using the Non-CPU lens data item in shooting menu (124) when a non-CPU lens is attached, the current f/-number will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel, rounded to the nearest full stop. Otherwise the aperture displays will show only the number of stops (IF, with maximum aperture displayed as IF) and the f/-number must be read from the lens aperture ring.

Exposure Warning

If the camera is unable to produce the correct exposure at the selected aperture, the electronic analog exposure display (93) in the viewfinder will show the amount of under- or over-exposure and one of the following indicators will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder shutter-speed displays:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hi</td>
<td>Subject too bright. Choose smaller aperture (larger f/-number) or lower sensitivity (ISO equivalency; 48), or use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lo</td>
<td>Subject too dark. Choose larger aperture (smaller f/-number) or higher sensitivity (ISO equivalency; 48), or use optional Speedlight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aperture Lock

Aperture can be locked at the selected setting (94).

b3—EV Step (184)

This option controls whether changes to shutter speed and aperture are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV (the default setting), 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

f5—Command Dials (202–203)

Command dials > Change Main/Sub and Command dials > Aperture setting control whether aperture is assigned with the main command dial, the sub-command dial, or the lens aperture ring. Regardless of the settings chosen, the command dials are always used with type G lenses, the lens aperture ring with non-CPU lenses.
**M: Manual**

In manual exposure mode, you control both shutter speed and aperture. Shutter speed can be set to values between 30 s and 1/8,000 s, or the shutter can be held open indefinitely for a long time-exposure (bulb). Aperture can be set to values between the minimum and maximum values for the lens. Using the electronic analog exposure display in the viewfinder, you can adjust exposure according to shooting conditions and the task at hand.

To take photographs in manual exposure mode:

1. Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until M is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

2. Rotate the main command dial to choose a shutter speed, and the sub-command dial to set aperture. Check exposure in the electronic analog exposure displays (see right), and continue to adjust shutter speed and aperture until the desired exposure is achieved.

3. Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

---

**Long Time-Exposures**

At a shutter speed of bulb, the shutter will remain open while the shutter-release button is held down. Nikon recommends using a fully-charged EN-EL4 battery or an optional EH-6 AC adapter to prevent loss of power while the shutter is open. Note that if the shutter is open for more than approximately ½ s at any setting, “noise” in the form of randomly-spaced, brightly-colored pixels may appear in the final photograph.

**AF Micro Nikkor Lenses**

Provided that an external exposure meter is used, the exposure ratio need only be taken into account when the lens aperture ring is used to set aperture.
Non-CPU Lenses

If the maximum aperture of the lens has been specified using the Non-CPU lens data item in shooting menu (124) when a non-CPU lens is attached, the current f/-number will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel, rounded to the nearest full stop. Otherwise the aperture displays will show only the number of stops (4F, with maximum aperture displayed as 4F0) and the f/-number must be read from the lens aperture ring.

Electronic Analog Exposure Displays

The electronic analog exposure displays in the top control panel and viewfinder show whether the photograph would be under- or over-exposed at current settings. Depending on the option chosen for Custom Setting b3 (EV step), the amount of under- or over-exposure is shown in increments of 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV. If the limits of the exposure metering system are exceeded, the displays will flash.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“EV step” set to “1/3 step”</th>
<th>“EV step” set to “1/2 step”</th>
<th>“EV step” set to “1 step”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Top control panel</td>
<td>Viewfinder</td>
<td>Top control panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimal exposure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underexposed by 1/3 EV</td>
<td>Underexposed by 1/2 EV</td>
<td>Underexposed by 1 EV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overexposed by more than 3 EV*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* At 1/3 step, 0 ---0 --- appears in the viewfinder when overexposure exceeds 2 EV.

b3—EV Step (184)

This option controls whether changes to shutter speed and aperture are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV (the default setting), 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

d4—Long Exp. NR (190)

To reduce noise at shutter speeds of about 1/2s or slower, select On for Custom Setting d4. Note that this will increase the time needed to process photographs before they are saved to the memory card.

f5—Command Dials (202–203)

Command dials > Change Main/Sub and Command dials > Aperture setting control whether aperture is assigned with the main command dial, the sub-command dial, or the lens aperture ring. Regardless of the settings chosen, the command dials are always used with type G lenses, the lens aperture ring with non-CPU lenses.
Shutter-Speed and Aperture Lock
The button can be used to lock shutter speed at the value selected in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, or to lock aperture at the value selected in aperture-priority auto and manual exposure modes. Lock is not available in programmed auto.

**Shutter-Speed Lock**
To lock shutter speed at the selected value, press the button and rotate the main command dial until shutter-speed lock icons appear in the viewfinder and the top control panel.

![Shutter-Speed Lock Icons](image)

To unlock shutter speed, press the button and rotate the main command dial until the lock icons disappear from the displays.

**Aperture Lock**
To lock aperture at the selected value, press the button and rotate the sub-command dial until aperture lock icons appear in the viewfinder and the top control panel.

![Aperture Lock Icons](image)

To unlock aperture, press the button and rotate the sub-command dial until the lock icons disappear from the displays.
Autoexposure Lock

When center-weighted metering is used, an area in the center of the frame is assigned the greatest weight when determining exposure. Similarly, when spot metering is used, exposure is based upon lighting conditions in the selected focus area. If the subject is not in the metered area when the picture is taken, exposure will be based on lighting conditions in the background, and the main subject may be under- or over-exposed. To prevent this, use autoexposure lock:

1. Select center-weighted or spot metering. If using center-weighted metering, select the center focus area with the multi selector (74).

2. Position the subject in the selected focus area and press the shutter-release button halfway. With the shutter-release button pressed halfway and the subject positioned in the focus area, press the AE-L/AF-L button to lock exposure (and focus, except in manual focus mode). Confirm that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.

While exposure lock is in effect, an AE-L indicator will appear in the viewfinder.
Keeping the AE-L/AF-L button pressed, recompose the photograph and shoot.

**Metered Area**
In spot metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in a 3-mm (0.12") circle centered on the selected focus area. In center-weighted metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in an 8-mm (0.31") circle at the center of the viewfinder.

**Adjusting Shutter Speed and Aperture**
While exposure lock is in effect, the following settings can be changed without altering the metered value for exposure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure mode</th>
<th>Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Programmed auto</td>
<td>Shutter speed and aperture (flexible program; 87)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter-priority auto</td>
<td>Shutter speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aperture-priority auto</td>
<td>Aperture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The new values can be confirmed in the viewfinder and control panel. Note that the metering method cannot be changed while exposure lock is in effect (changes to metering take effect when the lock is released).

**c1—AE Lock (186)**
If +Release Button is selected for AE lock, exposure will lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

**c2—AE-L/AF-L (186)**
Depending on the option selected, the AE-L/AF-L button locks both focus and exposure (the default setting), only focus, or only exposure. Options are available for keeping exposure locked until the AE-L/AF-L button is pressed a second time, the shutter is released, or exposure meters turn off.
Exposure Compensation

To obtain the desired results with certain subject compositions, it may be necessary to use exposure compensation to alter exposure from the value suggested by the camera. As a rule of thumb, positive compensation may be needed when the main subject is darker than the background, negative values when the main subject is brighter than the background.

1 Pressing the button, rotate the main command dial and confirm exposure compensation in the top control panel or the viewfinder (in the viewfinder, positive values are shown by a icon, negative values by a icon). Exposure compensation can be set to values between –5 EV (underexposure) and +5 EV (overexposure) in increments of 1/3 EV.

At values other than ±0, the 0 at the center of the electronic analog exposure displays will flash and a icon will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder after you release the button. The current value for exposure compensation can be confirmed in the electronic analog exposure display or by pressing the button.

2 Frame the photograph, focus, and shoot.

Normal exposure can be restored by setting exposure compensation to ±0 or performing a two button reset (128). Exposure compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off.

b4—Exposure Comp. EV (184)
Use this option to set the increments for exposure compensation to ½ or 1EV.

b5—Exposure Comp. (184)
If desired, exposure compensation can be set without pressing the button.
Bracketing

The D2H offers three types of bracketing: exposure bracketing, flash bracketing, and white balance bracketing. In exposure bracketing, the camera varies exposure compensation with each shot, while in the case of flash bracketing, flash level is varied with each shot (i-TTL and auto aperture flash control modes only; 109, 111). Only one photograph is produced each time the shutter is released, meaning that several shots (up to nine) are required to complete the bracketing sequence. Exposure and flash bracketing are recommended in situations in which it is difficult to set exposure and there is not enough time to check results and adjust settings with each shot.

In white balance bracketing, the camera creates multiple images each time the shutter is released, each with a different white balance adjustment (51). Only one shot is required to complete the bracketing sequence. White balance bracketing is recommended when shooting under mixed lighting or experimenting with different white balance settings. White balance bracketing is not available at white-balance settings of (Choose color temp.) or (preset) or at image qualities of NEF (Raw), NEF+JPEG Fine, NEF+JPEG Normal, or NEF+JPEG Basic.

**Exposure and Flash Bracketing**

1 Select the type of bracketing to be performed using Custom Setting e5 (Auto BKT set; 196). Choose AE & flash to vary both exposure and flash level (the default setting), AE only to vary only exposure, or Flash only to vary only flash level.

2 Pressing the BKT button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence (100–102). At settings other than zero, a BKT icon and bracketing indicator will be displayed in the top control panel, and a BKT icon will appear in the viewfinder.
3 Pressing the BKT button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the exposure increment (100–102).

4 Compose a photograph, focus, and shoot. The camera will vary exposure and/or flash level shot-by-shot according to the bracketing program selected. Modifications to exposure are added to those made with exposure compensation (97), making it possible to achieve exposure compensation values of more than 5 EV.

While bracketing is in effect, a bracketing progress indicator will be displayed in the top control panel. A segment will disappear from the indicator after each shot.

To cancel bracketing, press the BKT button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero and BKT is no longer displayed in the control panel on top of the camera. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by selecting WB bracketing for Custom Setting e5 or by performing a two-button reset (128), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated.

Shooting Mode
In single frame and self-timer modes, one shot will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. In continuous low speed and continuous high speed modes, shooting will pause after the number of shots specified in the bracketing program have been taken. Shooting will resume the next time the shutter-release button is pressed.

e8—Auto BKT Selection (198)
If desired, the main command dial can be used to turn bracketing on and off and the sub-command dial to select both the number of shots and the exposure increment.
The bracketing programs available depend on the option selected for Custom Setting b3 (EV step; 184).

### 1/3 Step Selected for EV Step

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control panel display</th>
<th>No. of shots</th>
<th>Exposure increment</th>
<th>Bracketing order (EVs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ 3F 0.3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+1/3 EV</td>
<td>+0.3, 0, +0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 3F 0.7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+2/3 EV</td>
<td>+0.7, 0, +1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 3F 1.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+1 EV</td>
<td>+1.0, 0, +2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- 3F 0.3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>–1/3 EV</td>
<td>–0.3, –0.7, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- 3F 0.7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>–2/3 EV</td>
<td>–0.7, –1.3, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- 3F 1.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>–1 EV</td>
<td>–1.0, –2.0, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 2F 0.3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+1/2 EV</td>
<td>0, +0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 2F 0.7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+2/3 EV</td>
<td>0, +0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 2F 1.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+1 EV</td>
<td>0, +1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- 2F 0.3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>–1/2 EV</td>
<td>0, –0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- 2F 0.7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>–2/3 EV</td>
<td>0, –0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- 2F 1.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>–1 EV</td>
<td>0, –1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 0.3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±1/3 EV</td>
<td>0, –0.3, +0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 0.7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±2/3 EV</td>
<td>0, –0.7, +0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 1.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, –1.0, +1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 0.3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±1/2 EV</td>
<td>0, –0.7, –0.3, +0.3, +0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 0.7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±2/3 EV</td>
<td>0, –1.3, –0.7, +0.7, +1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 1.0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 0.3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±1/2 EV</td>
<td>0, –1.0, –0.7, –0.3, +0.3, +0.7, +1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 0.7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±2/3 EV</td>
<td>0, –2.0, –1.3, –0.7, +0.7, +1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 1.0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 0.3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±1/2 EV</td>
<td>0, –1.3, –1.0, –0.7, –0.3, +0.3, +0.7, +1.0, +1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 0.7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±2/3 EV</td>
<td>0, –2.7, –2.0, –1.3, –0.7, +0.7, +1.3, +2.0, +2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 1.0</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, –4.0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0, +4.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 1/2 Step Selected for EV Step

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control panel display</th>
<th>No. of shots</th>
<th>Exposure increment</th>
<th>Bracketing order (EVs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ 3F 0.5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+½ EV</td>
<td>+0.5, 0, +1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 3F 1.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+1 EV</td>
<td>+1.0, 0, +2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 3F 0.5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-½ EV</td>
<td>-0.5, -1.0, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 3F 1.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1 EV</td>
<td>-1.0, -2.0, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 2F 0.5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+½ EV</td>
<td>0, +0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 2F 1.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+1 EV</td>
<td>0, +1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 2F 0.5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-½ EV</td>
<td>0, -0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 2F 1.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1 EV</td>
<td>0, -1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 0.5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±½ EV</td>
<td>0, -0.5, +0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 1.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, -1.0, +1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 0.5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±½ EV</td>
<td>0, -1.0, -0.5, +0.5, +1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 1.0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, -2.0, -1.0, +1.0, +2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 0.5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±½ EV</td>
<td>0, -1.5, -1.0, -0.5, +0.5, +1.0, +1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 1.0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, -3.0, -2.0, -1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 0.5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±½ EV</td>
<td>0, -2.0, -1.5, -1.0, -0.5, +0.5, +1.0, +1.5, +2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 1.0</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±1 EV</td>
<td>0, -4.0, -3.0, -2.0, -1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0, +4.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Taking Photographs—Exposure

Resuming Exposure or Flash Bracketing
If the memory card fills before all shots in the sequence have been taken, shooting can be resumed from the next shot in the sequence after the memory card has been replaced or shots have been deleted to make room on the memory card. If the camera is turned off before all shots in the sequence have been taken, bracketing will resume from the next shot in the sequence when the camera is turned on.

Exposure Bracketing
The camera modifies exposure by varying shutter speed and aperture (programmed auto), aperture (shutter-priority auto), or shutter speed (aperture-priority auto, manual exposure mode). When On is selected for Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto) and no Speedlight is attached, the camera will automatically vary sensitivity for optimum exposure when the limits of the camera exposure system are exceeded in programmed auto, shutter-priority auto, or aperture-priority exposure mode. If Custom Setting e5 (Auto BKT set) is set AE only or to AE & Flash with no Speedlight attached and On is selected for Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto), the camera will vary sensitivity without varying shutter speed or aperture, regardless of the setting chosen for Custom Setting e6 (see below).

e6—Manual Mode Bkting
This option controls how the camera performs exposure and flash bracketing in manual exposure mode. Bracketing can be performed by varying flash level together with shutter speed and/or aperture, or by varying flash level alone.

e7—Auto BKT Order
This option can be used to change the bracketing order.
White Balance Bracketing

1. Choose **WB bracketing** for Custom Setting e5 (*Auto BKT set; 196*).

2. Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence (105). At settings other than zero, a **WB-BKT** icon and bracketing indicator will appear in the top control panel. The rear control panel will show **WB-BKT** and the viewfinder **BKT**.

If the number of shots in the bracketing program is greater than the number of exposures remaining, a flashing **WB-BKT** icon will appear in the top control panel and the frame count and number of exposures remaining will flash. A flashing **WB-BKT** indicator will appear in the viewfinder and the shutter release will be disabled. Shooting can begin when a new memory card is inserted.

3. Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the white balance adjustment (105). Each increment is roughly equivalent to 10 mired.
Composing a photograph, focus, and shoot. Each shot will be processed to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program, and each copy will have a different white balance. Modifications to white balance are added to the white balance adjustment made with white balance fine-tuning (54).

To cancel bracketing, press the BKT button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero and white-balance bracketing indicators are no longer displayed in the control panels and viewfinder. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by selecting NEF (Raw), NEF+JPEG Fine, NEF+JPEG Normal, or NEF+JPEG Basic for image quality or by performing a two-button reset (128), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated.

White Balance Bracketing
White balance bracketing is not available at white-balance settings of K (Choose color temp.) or PRE (preset) or at an image quality of NEF (Raw), NEF+JPEG Fine, NEF+JPEG Normal, or NEF+JPEG Basic. Selecting any of these options cancels white balance bracketing.

Shooting Mode
In single frame and self-timer modes, the number of copies specified in the white balance program will be created each time the shutter is released. In continuous low speed and continuous high speed modes, only one shot will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. Each shot will be processed to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program.

Turning the Camera Off
If the camera is turned off while the camera before all photographs in a white-balance bracketing sequence have been recorded, the camera will power off only after all photographs in the sequence have been recorded. To turn the camera off without recording the remaining photographs, press the button while turning the camera off (keep the button pressed for at least one second after turning the camera off).

e8—Auto BKT Selection (198)
If desired, the main command dial can be used to turn bracketing on and off and the sub-command dial to select both the number of shots and the white-balance increment.
The number of shots, white balance (WB) increment, and bracketing order for each of the possible white-balance bracketing programs is shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control panel display</th>
<th>No. of shots</th>
<th>WB increment</th>
<th>Bracketing order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+3F 1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>+1, 0, +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+3F 2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>+2, 0, +4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+3F 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+3</td>
<td>+3, 0, +6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-3F 1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-1, -2, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-3F 2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-2, -4, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-3F 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3, -6, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+2F 1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>0, +1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+2F 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>0, +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+2F 3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+3</td>
<td>0, +3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2F 1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>0, -1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2F 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>0, -2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2F 3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>0, -3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±1</td>
<td>0, -1, +1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±2</td>
<td>0, -2, +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3F 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±3</td>
<td>0, -3, +3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±1</td>
<td>0, -2, -1, +1, +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±2</td>
<td>0, -4, -2, +2, +4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5F 3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>±3</td>
<td>0, -6, -3, +3, +6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±1</td>
<td>0, -3, -2, -1, +1, +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±2</td>
<td>0, -4, -2, +2, +4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7F 3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>±3</td>
<td>0, -6, -3, +3, +6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±1</td>
<td>0, -4, -3, -2, -1, +1, +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±2</td>
<td>0, -8, -4, -2, +2, +4, +6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9F 3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>±3</td>
<td>0, -12, -9, -6, -3, +3, +6, +9, +12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e7—Auto BKT Order (197)
This option can be used to change the bracketing order.
Taking Photographs—Flash Photography

The D2H supports flash photography when an optional Speedlight is mounted on the camera’s accessory shoe. A flash can be used not only when natural lighting is inadequate, but also to fill in shadows, illuminate back-lit subjects, and even to add a catch light to the eyes of a portrait subject.

The Creative Lighting System

When used with an SB-800 Speedlight (available separately), the D2H supports the full range of options available with the Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS), including i-TTL flash control, Flash Color Information Communication, Auto FP High-Speed Sync, FV Lock, and AF-assist illumination for multi-area autofocus. When used with multiple SB-800 flash units, the D2H also supports Advanced Wireless Lighting.

Advanced Wireless Lighting

Multiple SB-800 flash units can be used to eliminate shadows for a natural lighting effect or to light other areas of the frame away from the main subject. Flash modes supported include i-TTL flash control, auto aperture, and manual. The remote Speedlights can be divided into up to three groups (A, B, and C) and each group controlled separately by the master Speedlight mounted on the camera. The master Speedlight can be turned off and only remote Speedlights used, while flash compensation (±3 EV) and flash control (i-TTL, auto aperture, or manual) for the slave units can be controlled remotely. No cables are required.

Modeling Illumination

SB-800 Speedlights emit a modeling flash when the camera depth-of-field preview button is pressed. This feature can be used with Advanced Wireless Lighting to preview the total lighting effect achieved with multiple flash units. Modeling illumination can be turned off using Custom Setting e4 (Modeling flash; 195).
Flash Color Information Communication
SB-800 flash units can provide the camera information on the color temperature of the flash. When white balance for the D2H is set to A (Auto; 51), this allows automatic white-balance adjustment in response to fine variations in flash output. This feature can be used with Advanced Wireless Lighting and Auto FP High-Speed Sync.

To prevent white balance from being adjusted in response to color temperature variations, select a white balance setting other than A (Auto). Select (Flash) for fixed white balance.

Auto FP High-Speed Sync
Auto FP High-Speed Sync is activated automatically at shutter speeds faster than ½250 s, allowing auto flash control at all shutter speeds up to and including ½8,000 s (normal sync control is used at shutter speeds slower than ½250 s, including 

To use Auto FP High-Speed Sync, choose 1/250 (FP auto) for Custom Setting e1 (Flash sync speed).

The SB-800
The Nikon SB-800 is a high performance Speedlight with a guide number of 53/174 (m/ft, 35-mm zoom head position, ISO 200, 20°C/68°F). It can be powered by four AA batteries (five AA batteries when powered by the supplied SD-800 battery pack) or by SD-6, SD-7, or SD-8A power sources (available separately). For bounce-flash or close-up photography, the flash head can be rotated through 90° above and 7° below the horizontal, 180° left, and 90° right. Auto power zoom (24–105 mm) ensures that the illuminating is adjusted in accord with lens focal length. The built-in wide panel can be used for illuminating angles of 14 mm and 17 mm. The SB-800 is equipped with an illuminator to assist in adjusting settings in the dark. Custom settings are available for fine-tuning all aspects of flash operation.
**FV Lock**

This feature is used to lock flash output, allowing photographs to be recomposed without changing the flash level. This ensures that flash output is appropriate to the subject even when the subject is not positioned in the center of the frame. Flash output is adjusted automatically for any changes in sensitivity (ISO equivalency), aperture, and Speedlight zoom head position. FV Lock is available with i-TTL and auto aperture flash control, Advanced Wireless Lighting, and Auto FP High-Speed Sync.

To use FV Lock:

1. Select **FV Lock** or **FV Lock/Lens data** for Custom Setting f4 (**FUNC. button**; 201).
2. Mount an SB-800 Speedlight on the camera accessory shoe.
3. Turn the SB-800 on and set the flash mode to TTL or AA (see the SB-800 instruction manual for details).
4. Position the subject in the center of the frame and press the shutter-release button halfway to focus.
5. Press the **FUNC. button**. The SB-800 will emit a monitor preflash to determine the appropriate flash level. Flash output will be locked at this level and FV Lock icons (LOCK and L) will appear in the control panel and viewfinder.
6. Recompose the photograph and press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to shoot. If desired, additional pictures can be taken without releasing FV Lock.
7. Press the **FUNC. button** to release FV Lock and confirm that the FV Lock icons (LOCK and L) are no longer displayed in the control panel and viewfinder.
**AF-Assist for Multi-Area AF**
The SB-800 features AF-assist illumination linked to the D2H focus areas, allowing autofocus to be used even at night, regardless of the subject’s position in the frame. AF-assist illumination can be used in all AF-area modes, including single-area AF, dynamic-area AF, group dynamic-AF, and dynamic-area AF with closest-subject priority. If the subject is poorly lit, the AF-assist illuminator will light automatically when single-servo AF is used in combination with an AF-Nikkor lens (if a lens with an angle greater than 35 mm is used, the illuminator may not light if the focus area at the left or right edge of the frame are selected).

**i-TTL Flash Control**
When used with the D2H and set to TTL, the SB-800 automatically uses one of the following types of i-TTL flash control:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flash control</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR</td>
<td>Speedlight emits series of nearly invisible preflashes (monitor preflashes) immediately before main flash. Preflashes reflected from objects in all areas of frame are picked up by five-segment TTL flash control sensor or 1,005-pixel RGB sensor and are analyzed in combination with information from matrix metering system to adjust flash output for natural balance between main subject and ambient background lighting. When type G or D lens is used, distance information is included when calculating flash output. Precision of calculation can be increased for non-CPU lenses by providing lens data (focal length and maximum aperture; 124–127). Not available when spot metering is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard i-TTL Flash for Digital SLR</td>
<td>Flash output adjusted to ensure main subject is correctly exposed; brightness of background is not taken into account. Recommended for shots in which main subject is emphasized at expense of background details, or when exposure compensation is used. Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is activated automatically when spot metering is selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# D-TTL Flash Control

D-TTL flash control is available when an optional SB-series 80DX, 28DX, or 50DX Speedlight is mounted on the camera accessory shoe. D-TTL flash control is not available with other optional Speedlights. The type of flash control depends on the lens attached:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type G or D CPU lens</strong></td>
<td><strong>3D Multi-Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR</strong>: Speedlight emits a series of nearly invisible preflashes (monitor preflashes) immediately before main flash. Preflashes reflected from objects in all areas of frame are picked up by five-segment TTL flash control sensor and analyzed in combination with information from matrix metering system to adjust flash output for natural balance between main subject and ambient background lighting. Not available when spot metering is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other lenses</strong></td>
<td><strong>Multi-Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR</strong>: As above, except that distance information is not included in regulating flash output. Precision of calculation can be increased for non-CPU lenses by providing lens data (focal length and maximum aperture; [124–127]). Not available when spot metering is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>All types</strong></td>
<td><strong>Standard TTL Flash for Digital SLR</strong>: Flash output is adjusted to ensure that main subject is correctly exposed, without taking the background into account. Recommended for shots in which main subject is emphasized at the expense of background details, or when exposure compensation is used. Standard TTL flash for digital SLR is activated automatically when spot metering is selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Compatible Speedlights

The following Speedlights support TTL flash control:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flash mode/feature</th>
<th>SB-800 (Advanced Wireless Lighting)</th>
<th>SB-80DX SB-28DX</th>
<th>SB-50DX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i-TTL&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-TTL&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔ ✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto aperture&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-TTL auto</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range-priority manual</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FP high-speed sync</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeating flash</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear-curtain sync</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-eye reduction</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Color Information</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto FP High-Speed Sync</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FV Lock</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-assist for multi-area AF</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Standard i-TTL for Digital SLR is used when spot metering is selected. When using non-CPU lens with i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, improved precision can be obtained if lens data are specified in **Non-CPU lens data** menu.

2 Standard TTL Flash for Digital SLR is used when spot metering is selected. With matrix or center-weighted metering, flash control depends on lens type:
- Type G or D Nikkor (excluding IX Nikkor): 3D Multi Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR
- Other Nikkor (excluding AF Nikkor lenses for F3AF): Multi Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR (when using non-CPU lens, specify lens data in **Non-CPU lens data** menu for improved precision)

3 Not available with non-CPU lenses unless lens data have been specified using **Non-CPU lens data**.

4 Available only if non-CPU lens is used without specifying lens data in **Non-CPU lens data** menu.

5 FP high-speed sync must be selected manually.

6 Available with type G or D Nikkor (excluding IX Nikkor) and AF Nikkor (excluding AF Nikkor lenses for F3AF) CPU lenses only.
Taking Photographs—Flash Photography

The following Speedlights can be used in non-TTL auto and manual modes. If they are set to TTL, the camera shutter-release button will lock and no photographs can be taken.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FP high-speed sync</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeating flash</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAR</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-eye reduction</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The SB-26 can be set to slave mode for wireless slave flash photography. When the wireless slave selector is set to D, shutter speed will be set to under 1/300 s.
2 When an SB-27 is mounted on the D2H, the flash mode is automatically set to TTL, and the shutter-release will be disabled. Set the SB-27 to A (non-TTL auto flash).
3 Autofocus is only available with AF-Micro lenses (60 mm, 105 mm, 200 mm, or 70–180 mm).
4 When using the SB-11 or SB-14 in A or M mode, use the SU-2 with an SC-13 sync cable. Although SC-11 and SC-15 sync cables can be used, the flash-ready indicator will not appear in the viewfinder and shutter speed will not be adjusted automatically.
5 FP high-speed sync must be selected manually.

Use Only Nikon Flash Accessories

Use only Nikon Speedlights. Negative voltages or voltages over 250 V applied to the accessory shoe could not only prevent normal operation, but damage the sync circuitry of the camera or flash. Before using a Nikon Speedlight not included in the list on these pages, contact a Nikon-authorized service representative for more information.

ISO Auto

If a Speedlight is used when Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto) is on, sensitivity (ISO equivalence) will be fixed at the value selected by the user.
Flash Sync Modes
The D2H supports the following flash sync modes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flash sync mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Front-curtain sync" /></td>
<td>This mode is recommended for most situations. In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto modes, shutter speed will automatically be set to values between 1/60 and 1/250 s (1/60 to 1/8,000 s with Auto FP High-Speed Sync).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Slow sync" /></td>
<td>Flash is combined with speeds as slow as 30 s to capture both subject and background at night or under dim light. This mode is only available in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. Use of tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Rear-curtain sync" /></td>
<td>In shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, flash fires just before the shutter closes, creating effect of a stream of light behind moving objects. In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto, slow rear-curtain sync is used to capture both subject and background. Use of tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Red-eye reduction" /></td>
<td>In this mode (available only with SB-series 800, 80DX, 28DX, 28, 27, 26, and 25 Speedlights), red-eye reduction pre-flash lights for approximately one second before main flash. Pupils in subject’s eyes to contract, reducing “red-eye” effect sometimes caused by flash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Red-eye reduction with slow sync" /></td>
<td>Combines red-eye reduction with slow sync. This mode is only available with SB-series 800, 80DX, 28DX, 28, 27, 26, and 25 Speedlights in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. Use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **SB-Series 26, 25, and 24 Speedlights**
  Front- and rear-curtain sync modes for SB-series 26, 25, and 24 Speedlights are set using the sync mode selector on the optional Speedlight. Camera red-eye reduction settings take priority over mode selected with SB-26.

- **Studio Flash Systems**
  Rear-curtain sync can not be used with studio flash systems, as the correct synchronization can not be obtained.
To choose the flash sync mode, press the button and rotate the main command dial until the desired flash sync mode is selected in the top control panel:

1 Slow sync is available only in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. In shutter-priority auto and manual exposure modes, (front-curtain sync) will be selected when the button is released.

2 In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes, flash-sync mode will be set to (slow rear-curtain sync) when the button is released.

3 If the Speedlight does not support red-eye reduction, the icon in the flash sync mode display will blink.

4 Red-eye reduction with slow sync is available only in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. In shutter-priority auto and manual exposure modes, (red-eye reduction) will be selected when the button is released.
**Shutter Speed and Aperture**

The following table lists values that can be chosen for shutter speed and aperture when an optional Speedlight is used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure mode</th>
<th>Shutter speed</th>
<th>Aperture</th>
<th>ISO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Programmed auto</td>
<td>Set automatically by camera*</td>
<td>Set automatically by camera</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter-priority auto</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{250}$ s–30 s†</td>
<td>Value selected by user‡</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aperture-priority auto</td>
<td>Set automatically by camera*</td>
<td>Set automatically by camera</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{250}$ s–30 s†</td>
<td>Set automatically by camera</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Shutter speeds are set automatically in the range $\frac{1}{250}$ s–$\frac{1}{60}$ s, or $\frac{1}{250}$ s–30 s at flash sync settings of slow sync, slow rear-curtain sync, and red-eye reduction with slow sync. If $1/250$ (FP auto) is selected for Custom Setting e1 (Flash sync speed) when an optional SB-800 Speedlight is used, shutter speeds may be as fast as $\frac{1}{8,000}$ s.

† If $1/250$ (FP auto) is selected for Custom Setting e1 (Flash sync speed) when an optional SB-800 Speedlight is used, shutter speeds may be as fast as $\frac{1}{8,000}$ s.

‡ Flash range varies with aperture. When setting aperture in aperture-priority auto and manual exposure modes, consult the table of flash ranges provided with optional Speedlight.

**ISO Auto**

If a Speedlight is used when Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto) is on, sensitivity (ISO equivalency) will be fixed at the value selected by the user.

**e1—Flash Sync Speed (194)**

This option can be used to enable Auto FP High-Speed Sync or limit the fastest sync speed to a speed slower than $\frac{1}{250}$ s. To fix shutter speed at the sync speed limit in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure modes, select next the shutter speed after the slowest possible shutter speed (30 s or $\frac{1}{2}$ s). An X will be displayed in the flash sync indicator in the top control panel.

**e2—Flash Shutter Speed (194)**

This option can be used to limit the slowest shutter speed possible when using an optional Speedlight in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes.
Notes on Optional Speedlights

Refer to the Speedlight manual for detailed instructions. If the Speedlight supports i-TTL or D-TTL flash control, refer to the entry for digital SLR cameras in the table of camera types.

If Auto FP High-Speed Sync is not used, the shutter will synchronize with an external flash at speeds of $\frac{1}{250}$ s or slower.

If the flash-ready indicator blinks for about three seconds after a photograph is taken with i-TTL or D-TTL flash control, the photograph may be underexposed.

The SB-28DX displays exposure in increments of $\frac{1}{3}$ EV. If the camera is set to control exposure in increments of $\frac{1}{2}$ EV using Custom Setting b2, the SB-28DX exposure display will not show the correct ISO value. The actual exposure value is not affected.

i-TTL and D-TTL flash control can be used to adjust flash output at sensitivity (ISO equivalency) settings between 200 and 1600. At settings of HI-1 and HI-2, the desired results may not be achieved at some ranges or aperture settings.

The AF-assist illuminator on SB-series 80DX, 28DX, 28, 27, 26, and 24 Speedlights will only light if all of the following conditions are met: focus mode is set to single-servo auto, an AF-Nikkor lens is used, the subject is poorly lit, and the center focus area is selected or dynamic-area AF is used in combination with closest-subject priority.

In programmed auto, the maximum aperture (minimum f/-number) is limited according to sensitivity (ISO equivalency), as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum aperture at an ISO equivalent of:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For each one-step increase in sensitivity (e.g., from 200 to 400), aperture is stopped down by half an f/-stop. If the maximum aperture of the lens is smaller than given above, the maximum value for aperture will be the maximum aperture of the lens.

When an SC-series 17, 28, or 29 sync cable is used for off-camera flash photography, correct exposure may not be achieved in i-TTL or D-TTL mode. We recommend that you choose spot metering to select standard i-TTL or D-TTL flash control. Take a test shot and view the results in the monitor.

In i-TTL or D-TTL mode, use the flash panel provided with your Speedlight. Do not use other panels such as diffusion panels, as this may produce incorrect exposure.

D-TTL flash control can not be used for multi-flash photography.
Flash Contacts and Indicators
The D2H is equipped with an accessory shoe for attaching Speedlights directly to the camera and a sync terminal that allows Speedlights to be connected via a sync cable. When a Speedlight is connected, the flash-ready indicator in the viewfinder shows whether the flash is fully charged and ready for use.

The Accessory Shoe
SB-series Speedlights, including the SB-800, 80DX, 28DX, 50DX, 27, 23, 22s, and 29s, can be mounted directly on the camera accessory shoe without a sync cable. The accessory shoe is equipped with a safety lock for Speedlights with a locking pin (e.g., SB-series 80DX and 27).

The Sync Terminal
A sync cable can be connected to the sync terminal as required. Do not connect another Speedlight via a sync cable when performing rear-curtain sync flash photography with an SB-series Speedlights such as the 800, 80DX, 28DX, 50DX, 27, 23, 22s, or 29s mounted on the camera accessory shoe.

The Flash-Ready Indicator
When an SB-series Speedlight such as the 800, 80DX, 28DX, 50DX, 27, 23, 22s, or 29s is connected, the flash-ready indicator will light when the flash is fully charged and ready for use. If the indicator blinks for approximately three seconds after a photograph is taken in i-TTL or D-TTL modes, the flash has fired at full output and the photograph may be underexposed. Check the results in the monitor. If the photograph is underexposed, adjust the distance to the subject, aperture, or flash range and try again.
The D2H is equipped to take photographs automatically at preset intervals.

1. Highlight **Intvl timer shooting** in the shooting menu (169) and press the multi selector to the right.

2. Press the multi selector left or right to highlight options and press the multi selector up or down to change interval timer settings. The selected option is highlighted in blue. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Start</strong></td>
<td>Choose starting for interval timer photography from:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Now</strong>: Shooting begins about 3 s after this option is selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Start time</strong>: Shooting begins at <strong>Start time</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Start time</strong></td>
<td>Enter start time for interval timer photography when <strong>Start time</strong> is selected for <strong>Start</strong>. Press multi selector left or right to highlight starting hour or minute, press up or down to change. Not available when <strong>Now</strong> is selected for <strong>Start</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interval</strong></td>
<td>Enter time between shots. Press multi selector left or right to highlight hour, minute, or second, press up or down to change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Select intvl*no. of shots</strong></td>
<td>Choose number of intervals and number of shots taken at each interval. Press multi selector left or right to highlight number of intervals or number of shots, press up or down to change. Total number of shots that will be taken appears to right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remaining (intvl*shots)</strong></td>
<td>Shows number of intervals and total shots remaining in current interval program. This item cannot be edited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Start</strong></td>
<td>Choose <strong>Off</strong> to exit without starting interval timer. To start interval timer, select <strong>On</strong> and press <strong>.</strong> Shooting will start at selected start time and will continue for specified number of intervals.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
After highlighting **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu and pressing the multi selector up or down to select **On**, press the **button.** The first series of shots will be taken at the specified starting time. Shooting will continue at the selected interval until all shots have been taken. If interval timer photography can not proceed at current settings (for example, if a shutter speed of **bulb** is currently selected in manual exposure mode, or the starting time is less than one minute from the current time) a warning will appear and the interval timer menu will be displayed again.

Use of a tripod is recommended.

**Take a Test Shot**

Before beginning interval timer photography, take a test shot at current settings and view the results in the monitor. Remember that the camera will focus before each shot—no shots will be taken if the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF.

**Use a Reliable Power Source**

To ensure that shooting is not interrupted, be sure the battery is fully charged. If in doubt, charge the battery before shooting or use an optional EH-6 AC adapter.

**Check the Time**

Before choosing a starting time, select **Date** in the setup menu and make sure that the camera clock is set to the correct time and date (19).

**Out of Memory**

If the memory card is full, the interval timer will remain active but no pictures will be taken. Delete some pictures or turn the camera off and insert another memory card. When the camera is turned on, interval timer photography will be paused. See “Pausing Interval Timer Photography” on the following page for information on resuming interval timer photography.

**Bracketing**

Adjust bracketing settings before starting interval timer photography. If exposure and/or flash bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take the number of shots in the bracketing program at each interval, regardless of the number of shots specified in the interval timer menu. If white balance bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take the number of shots specified in the interval timer menu and process each shot to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program.
**During Shooting**

During interval timer photography, the **interval** icon in the top control panel will blink. Immediately before the next shooting interval begins, the shutter speed display will show the number of intervals remaining, and the aperture display will show the number of shots remaining in the current interval. At other times, the number of intervals remaining and the number of shots in each interval can be viewed by pressing the shutter-release button halfway (once the button is released, the shutter speed and aperture will be displayed until the exposure meters turn off).

To view current interval timer settings, select **Intvl timer shooting** between shots. While interval timer photography is in progress, the interval timer menu will show the starting time, the current time, the shooting interval, the selected number of intervals and number of shots, and the number of intervals and shots remaining. None of these items can be changed while interval timer photography is in progress.

**During Shooting**

Shooting and menu settings can be adjusted freely while interval timer photography is in progress. Note the following:

- Performing a two-button reset (128) or changing bracketing settings (98) will cancel interval timer photography.
- No photographs will be taken if interval timer shooting begins while the user is measuring a value for preset white balance.
- If shutter speed is set to **b u l b** (manual exposure mode) after the timer has started, subsequent photographs will be taken at a shutter speed of 1/3s.
- The monitor will turn off about four seconds before each interval.
- If voice memos are recorded automatically after shooting, voice memos will end two seconds before the next photograph is taken.

**C-Mode Max. Shots**

If the number of shots per interval is greater than the limit specified in Custom Setting d2 (C-Mode max. shots), only the number of shots specified in Custom Setting d2 will be taken at each interval.
**Pausing Interval Timer Photography**

To pause interval timer photography:

1. Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu.

2. Press the multi selector up or down to select **Pause** and press the 
button.

Interval time photography can also be paused by:

- Pressing the 
button between intervals.
- Turning the camera off (if desired, the memory card can be replaced while the camera is off).

Interval timer photography will be paused when the camera is turned on.

When shooting is paused, the start time will be reset to **Now**. A new starting time can be selected as described in Step 2 of “Interval Timer Photography” (p. 118). The interval, number of intervals, and number of shots can not be changed. If interval timer photography is paused during shooting, any shots remaining in the current interval will be cancelled.

1. Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu (see above).

2. Press the multi selector up or down to select **Resume** and press the 
button.

---

**No Photograph**

Photographs will not be taken if:

- The self-timer is in operation or the previous photograph has yet to be taken
- The memory buffer or memory card is full
- The camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF (note that the camera focuses again before each shot)
- The user is measuring a value for preset white balance or taking a reference photo for Image Dust Off using the **Dust Off ref photo** item in the setup menu.
**Interrupting Interval Timer Photography**

To interrupt interval timer photography:

1. Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu (see opposite).

2. Press the multi selector up or down to select **Done** and press the **Enter** button.

Interval timer photography will also be interrupted if:
- A two button reset is performed (128).
- Another shooting bank is selected (162).
- **Reset shooting menu** is selected in the shooting menu (164).
- Bracketing settings are changed (98).
- The battery is exhausted.
- The clock battery is exhausted.
- The camera is connected to a computer.

Normal shooting will resume when interval timer photography ends.

**Shooting Mode**

Regardless of the shooting mode selected, the camera will take the specified number of shots at each interval. In **CH** (continuous high speed) mode, photographs will be taken at a rate of eight shots per second. In **S** (single frame), **CL** (continuous low-speed), and **M-up** (mirror up) modes, photographs will be taken at the rate chosen for Custom Setting d1 (**Shooting speed**; 188). In **Self** (self-timer) mode, the shutter-release delay applies to each photograph taken.

In **M-up** mode, the mirror will be raised automatically immediately before each shot. If the shutter-release button is pressed between photographs, the mirror will be raised and will remain raised until the next photograph is taken.

**Shooting Menu Banks**

Changes to interval timer settings apply to all shooting menu banks (162). If shooting menu settings are reset using the **Reset shooting menu** item in the shooting menu (164), interval timer settings will be reset as follows:
- Start time: **Now**
- Interval: 00:01:00
- Number of intervals: 1
- Number of shots: 1
- Start: **Off**
The self-timer can be used to reduce camera shake or for self-portraits. To use the self-timer:

1. Mount the camera on a tripod (recommended) or place the camera on a stable, level surface.

2. Press the shooting mode dial lock release and rotate the shooting mode dial to select (self-timer mode).

3. Frame the photograph and focus. If autofocus is in effect, be sure not to block the lens when activating the self-timer. In single-servo autofocus (72), photographs can only be taken if the in-focus (●) indicator appears in the viewfinder.

   **Close the Viewfinder Eyepiece Shutter**

   To ensure correct exposure in exposure modes other than manual, close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter after focusing. This will prevent light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with the autoexposure operation.

4. Press the shutter-release button all the way down to start the self-timer. The self-timer lamp will start to blink, stopping two seconds before the photograph is taken.

   To turn the self-timer off before a photograph is taken, turn the mode dial to another setting.

   In self-timer mode, a shutter speed of \( \frac{1}{3} \text{s} \) is equivalent to approximately \( \frac{1}{3} \text{s} \).

   Self-timer delay can be set to 2s, 5s, 10s (the default setting), or 20s.
By specifying lens data (lens focal length and maximum aperture), the user can gain access to a variety of CPU lens functions when using a non-CPU lens. If the focal length of the lens is known:

- Automatic power zoom can be used with attached Speedlights
- Lens focal length is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

When the maximum aperture of the lens is known:

- The aperture value is displayed in the top control panel and viewfinder
- Flash level is adjusted for changes in aperture
- Aperture is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

Specifying both the focal length and maximum aperture of the lens:

- Enables color matrix metering (note that it may be necessary to use center-weighted or spot metering to achieve accurate results with some lenses, including Reflex-Nikkor lenses)
- Improves the precision of center-weighted and spot metering, i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, and Multi-Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR

### Specifying Lens Focal Length

Lens focal length can be specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the FUNC. button and rotating the main command dial. The following settings are available:

- 6–45 mm: 6, 8, 13, 15, 16, 18, 20, 24, 25, 28, 35, 43, and 45 mm
- 50–180 mm: 50, 55, 58, 70, 80, 85, 86, 100, 105, 135, and 180 mm
- 200–4000 mm: 200, 300, 360, 400, 500, 600, 800, 1000, 1200, 1400, 1600, 2000, 2400, 2800, 3200, and 4000 mm

### The Non-CPU Lens Data Menu

1. Highlight **Non-CPU lens data** in the shooting menu (169) and press the multi selector to the right.
2 Highlight **Focal length** and press the multi selector to the right.

3 Select the group to which the lens belongs from **6-45, 50-180, 200-4000** and press the multi selector to the right.

4 Select the lens focal length (in mm) and press the multi selector to the right.

---

°Focal Length Not Listed

If the correct focal length is not listed, choose the closest value greater than the actual focal length of the lens.

°Fzoom Lenses

Lens data are not adjusted when non-CPU lenses are zoomed in or out. After changing the zoom position, select new values for lens focal length and maximum aperture.

°Fdefault Maximum Aperture

Selecting a focal length sets **Maximum aperture** the last value selected at that focal length.
The Function Button

1. Select **FV Lock/Lens data** for Custom Setting f4 (FUNC. Button; 201).

2. Press the FUNC. button and rotate the main command dial. Focal length is displayed in the top control panel:

![Focal Length Display](Image)

Specifying Maximum Aperture

Lens maximum aperture can be specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the FUNC. button and rotating the sub-command dial. The following f/numbers are available:

- 1.2, 1.4, 1.8, 2, 2.5, 2.8, 3.3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 5.6, 6.3, 7.1, 8, 9.5, 11, 13, 15, 16, 19, 22

The Non-CPU Lens Data Menu

1. Highlight **Non-CPU lens data** in the shooting menu (169) and press the multi selector to the right.
2 Highlight **Maximum aperture** and press the multi selector to the right.

3 Select the f/-number corresponding to the maximum lens aperture and press the multi selector to the right.

**The Function Button**

1 Select **FV Lock/Lens data** for Custom Setting f4 (FUNC. Button; 201).

2 Press the FUNC. button and rotate the sub-command dial. Maximum aperture is displayed in the top control panel:

![Maximum aperture display](image)

**SB-800**

If an SB-800 Speedlight is mounted on the camera, turn the Speedlight off before using the Function button to specify lens data.
Two-Button Reset

Restoring Default Settings

The camera settings listed below can be restored to default values by holding the WB and ISO buttons down together for more than two seconds (these buttons are marked by a green dot). Custom Settings are not affected.

### Option | Default
--- | ---
Focus area | Center*<br>Flexible program | Off<br>Exposure mode | Programmed auto<br>Exposure compensation | ±0<br>AE hold | Off†

* If AF-area mode is set to group dynamic-AF, center group will be selected.
† Custom Setting c2 (AE-L/AF-L) is unaffected.

The following shooting-menu options will also be reset. Only settings in the bank currently selected using the **Shooting menu bank** option will be reset (162). Settings in the remaining banks are unaffected.

### Option | Default
--- | ---
Image quality | JPEG Normal<br>Image size | Large
White bal. | Auto*<br>ISO | 200

* Fine tuning reset to 0.

---

### Reset Shooting Menu (164)

Other shooting menu options for the current shooting menu bank can be reset by selecting **Yes** for the **Reset shooting menu** option in the shooting menu.

### R—Menu Reset (174)

Custom Settings for the current custom settings bank can be restored to default values by selecting **Yes** for Custom Setting R (**Menu Reset**).
More About Playback

Playback Options

This section details the operations that can be performed during playback, including thumbnail playback, playback zoom, and photo information display.
Single-Image Playback

To play photographs back, press the button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.

To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the button or press the shutter-release button halfway. To view camera menus (148), press the button.
Using the Multi Selector
The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

Image Review (159)
When On is selected for Image review in the playback menu, photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor as they are being recorded to the memory card. In single-frame, self-timer, and mirror-up modes, photographs are displayed one at a time as they are taken. In continuous shooting mode, display begins when shooting ends, with the first photograph in the current series displayed. Playback will be interrupted when the shutter-release button is pressed, and resume when the button is released after shooting.

c5—Monitor Off (187)
The monitor will turn off automatically to save power if no operations are performed for the time specified in Custom Setting c5 (Monitor off). Press the button again to return to playback mode.
Photo Information

More About Playback

Photo information is superimposed on images displayed in single-image playback. Depending on the option selected for **Display mode** in the playback menu (p. 159), there are up to seven pages of information for each photo. Press the multi-selector left or right to cycle through photo information as follows: (Page 4) ↔ (Page 3) ↔ Page 2 ↔ Page 1 ↔ (Page 5) ↔ (Page 6) ↔ (Page 4).

**Page 1**

1. Voice memo icon ... 141
2. Protect status ........... 137
3. Folder number/frame number ................. 150

**Page 2**

1. Voice memo icon ... 141
2. Protect status ........... 137
3. Focus brackets* ....... 74
4. Frame number/total number of frames .... 150
5. File name ................. 42
6. Folder name ............. 150
7. Image size ............... 44
8. Image quality ............ 41
9. Date of recording ........ 19
10. Time of recording ....... 19
11. Folder number/frame number ................. 150

*If **Focus area** is selected for **Display mode** in playback menu (p. 159), active focus area is highlighted in red (in photos taken using single-servo AF with dynamic-area AF, group dynamic-AF, or closest-subject priority, area where focus first locked is highlighted).

**Page 3 (Shooting Data 1)**

1. Voice memo icon ... 141
2. Protect status ........... 137
3. Camera name
4. Metering method ....... 84
5. Shutter speed ............ 85
6. Aperture ................. 85
7. Exposure mode ......... 85
8. Exposure compensation.... 97
9. Focal length ............. 228
10. Folder number/frame number ................. 150

*Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** in playback menu (p. 159).
Page 4 (Shooting Data 2)*

1 Voice memo icon ... 141  
2 Protect status........... 137  
3 Sensitivity
(ISO equivalency) ..... 48  
4 White balance ........... 51  
5 White balance
adjustment ............. 54  
6 Tone compensation.. 66  
7 Sharpening............. 65  
8 Color mode............. 67  
9 Image comment ....... 210  
10 Folder number/frame
number .................. 150  

*Displayed only if Data is selected for Display mode in playback menu (159).

Page 5 (Histogram)*

1 Voice memo icon ................................................ 141  
2 Protect status.................................................... 137  
3 Histogram showing the distribution of tones in the
image. The horizontal axis corresponds to pixel
brightness, with dark tones to the left and bright
tones to the right. The vertical axis shows the num-
er of pixels of each brightness in the image.  
4 Folder number/frame number ............................ 150  

*Displayed only if Histogram is selected for Display mode in playback
menu (159).

Page 6 (Highlights)*

1 Voice memo icon ................................................ 141  
2 Protect status.................................................... 137  
3 Image highlights (brightest areas of image) are
marked by a flashing border.  
4 Folder number/frame number ............................ 150  

*Displayed only if Highlights is selected for Display mode in playback
menu (159).

![Histograms]

Camera histograms are for use only as a guide and may differ from those displayed in
imaging applications.

![f3—Photo Info/Playback (200)]

The roles of the multi selector buttons can be reversed, so that the left and right but-
tons display other images and the up and down buttons control photo information.
Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback

To display images in “contact sheets” of four or nine images, press the \( \text{button} \) and rotate the main command dial. The following operations can be performed while thumbnails are displayed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Press and/or rotate</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change number of images displayed</td>
<td>( \text{button} ) and rotate main command dial</td>
<td>Press ( \text{button} ) and rotate main command dial to change the number of images displayed as follows: single image ↔ four thumbnails ↔ nine thumbnails ↔ single image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggle full frame playback</td>
<td>( \text{center of multi selector} )</td>
<td>Press center of multi selector to switch back and forth between full frame and thumbnail playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight images</td>
<td>( \text{multi selector up, right, left, or down} )</td>
<td>Press multi selector up, right, left, or down to highlight thumbnails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page through images</td>
<td>( \text{button} ) and rotate sub-command dial</td>
<td>Press ( \text{button} ) and rotate sub-command dial to scroll through images a page at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete images</td>
<td>( \text{for enlarged view of highlighted photo (136).} )</td>
<td>Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press ( \text{button} ) again to delete photo. To exit without deleting photo, press multi selector left or right.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{f1—Center Button \( \text{button} \) Playback Mode (198)} \)

Instead of toggling between full-frame and thumbnail playback, the center of the multi selector can be used to toggle playback zoom or display a histogram.
### More About Playback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Press and/or rotate</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Record/play voice memo</td>
<td></td>
<td>If voice memo has not been recorded for highlighted photo, voice memo will be recorded while button is pressed (140). If voice memo has been recorded for highlighted image, pressing button will start playback. Press again to pause playback (144).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change protect status of highlighted photo</td>
<td></td>
<td>Images marked by icon can not be deleted using button or Delete option in playback menu (note that protected images will be deleted when memory card is formatted). To protect image, or to remove protection from protected image, press button (137).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display menus</td>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>Press button to display camera menus (39).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to shooting mode</td>
<td>Shutter-release/</td>
<td>To end playback and return to shooting mode, press button or press shutter-release button halfway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

#### Image Review (159)

When On is selected for Image review in the playback menu, photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor as they are being recorded to the memory card. In single-frame and self-timer modes, photographs are displayed one at a time as they are taken. In continuous shooting mode, display begins when shooting ends. Thumbnail playback is only available in continuous shooting mode. Playback will be interrupted when the shutter-release button is pressed, and resume when the button is released after shooting.

#### c5—Monitor Off (187)

The monitor will turn off automatically to save power if no operations are performed for the time specified in Custom Setting c5 (Monitor off). Press the button again to return to playback mode.
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom

Press the button to zoom in on the image displayed in single-image playback or on the image currently highlighted in thumbnail playback. The following operations can be performed while zoom is in effect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Press and/or rotate</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cancel/resume zoom</td>
<td></td>
<td>Press button to cancel zoom and return to single-image or thumbnail playback. Press again to zoom image in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select area displayed</td>
<td></td>
<td>Press button to display frame showing area currently zoomed in. While button is pressed, multi selector can be used to move frame and main command dial can be used to control size of frame (rotate dial counterclockwise to zoom out, clockwise to zoom in). Release button to magnify selected area to fill monitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View other images</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rotate main command dial to view same area of other images at current zoom ratio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View other areas of image</td>
<td></td>
<td>Use multi selector to view area not visible in monitor. Hold multi selector down to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Instead of toggling between full-frame and thumbnail playback, the center of the multi selector can be used to toggle playback zoom or display a histogram.
Protecting Photographs from Deletion

In full-frame and thumbnail playback, the button can be used to protect photographs from accidental deletion. Protected files cannot be deleted using the button or the Delete option in the playback menu, and have DOS “read-only” status when viewed on a Windows computer. Note that protected images will be deleted when the memory card is formatted.

To protect a photograph:

1. Display the image in full-frame playback or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2. Press the button. The photograph will be marked with a icon.

To remove protection from the photograph so that it can be deleted, display the photograph in full-frame playback or highlight it in the thumbnail list and then press the button.

Voice Memos

Changes to the protect status of images also apply to any voice memos that may have been recorded with the images. Voice memo protect status cannot be set separately.

Removing Protection from All Images

To remove protection from all images in the folder or folders currently selected for playback, press the and buttons together for about two seconds.
Deleting Individual Photographs

To delete a photograph displayed in single-image playback, or the photograph highlighted in thumbnail playback, press the button. Once deleted, photographs can not be recovered.

1 Display the image in full-frame playback or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2 Press the button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

3 To delete the photograph, press the button again. To exit without deleting the photograph, press the multi selector left or right.

Voice Memos

If a voice memo has been recorded with the selected image, the confirmation dialog shown at right will be displayed when the button is pressed.

- **Image/Sound**: Select this option and press the button to delete both photo and voice memo.
- **Sound only**: Select this option and press the button to delete only the voice memo.

To exit without deleting either voice memo or photo, press multi selector left or right.

Protected and Hidden Images

Images marked with a icon are protected and can not be deleted. Hidden images are not displayed in single-image or thumbnail playback and can not be selected for deletion.

Delete (148)

To delete multiple images, use the Delete option in the playback menu.

After Delete (160)

The After delete option in the playback menu determines whether the next image or the previous image is displayed after an image is deleted.
The D2H is equipped with a built-in microphone, allowing voice memos to be added to photographs. Voice memos can be played back over the camera’s built-in speaker.
Recording Voice Memos

Voice memos up to sixty seconds long can be added to photographs using the built-in microphone. In shooting mode, a voice memo can be added to the most recent photograph. In playback mode, voice memos can be added to photographs displayed in single-image playback or selected in the thumbnail list.

1 Ready the camera for recording.

**Shooting Mode**

At default settings, voice memos can not be recorded in shooting mode. To enable automatic or manual voice memo recording, select the appropriate option for **Voice memo** in the camera setup menu (212). Voice memos can only be added to the last photograph taken.

**Playback Mode**

Display the photograph to which the memo is to be added (single-image playback) or highlight the photograph in the thumbnail list (thumbnail playback). Only one voice memo can be recorded per image; a voice memo can not be recorded if one already exists for the selected image.

2 Press and hold the button. A voice memo will be recorded while the button is held down (note that no voice memo will be recorded if the button is not held down for at least one second).

**Automatic Recording (Shooting Mode)**

If **On (auto and manual)** is selected for **Voice memo**, a voice memo will be recorded for the last photograph taken when the shutter-release button is released after shooting. Recording will end when the button is pressed or after the specified recording time has ended.

**Dust Off Ref Photos**

Voice memos can not be recorded for Image Dust Off reference data (214).
Interrupting Recording
Recording will end automatically if:
• The button is pressed to display the menus
• The button is pressed
• The shutter-release button is pressed halfway
• The camera is turned off
During interval timer photography, recording will end automatically about two seconds before the next photograph is taken.

During Recording
During recording, the icons in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar will blink. A countdown timer in the rear control panel shows the length of the voice memo that can be recorded (in seconds).

In playback mode, a icon is displayed in the monitor during recording.

After Recording
If a voice memo has been recorded for the most recent photograph, a icon will be displayed in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar.

If a voice memo exists for the photograph currently selected in playback mode, a icon will be displayed in the monitor.

Voice Memo File Names
Voice memos are stored as WAV files with names of the form “DSC_\text{nunn}.WAV,” where “nunn” is a four-digit file number copied from the image with which the voice memo is associated. For example, the voice memo for the image “DSC_0002.JPG” would have the file name “DSC_0002.WAV.” Voice memo file names can be viewed on a computer.
Voice Memo Recording Options

Three setup menu options control voice memo recording: Voice memo, Voice memo protect, and Voice memo button.

Voice Memo

To choose a voice memo option for shooting mode, highlight Voice memo in the setup menu (212) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off (default)</td>
<td>Voice memos can not be recorded in shooting mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On (auto and manual)</td>
<td>Selecting this option displays menu shown at right; select maximum recording time from 5, 10, 20, 30, 45, or 60s. Unless On is selected for Image review in playback menu, recording will begin when shutter-release button is released after shooting. Recording ends when button is pressed or after specified recording time has ended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual only</td>
<td>Memo can be recorded for most recent photograph by pressing and holding button (140).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Voice Memo

The option selected for Voice memo is indicated by an icon in the rear control panel.
**Voice Memo Protect**
This option controls whether the voice memo for the most recent photograph can be overwritten in shooting mode. Highlight **Voice memo protect** in the setup menu (212) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>On</strong></td>
<td>Voice memo can not be recorded in shooting mode if one already exists for most recent image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Off</strong></td>
<td>Voice memo can be recorded in shooting mode even if one already exists for most recent image. Existing memo will be deleted and replaced by new memo. Voice memos can not be overwritten in playback mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Voice Memo Button**
This option controls manual recording. Highlight **Voice memo button** in the setup menu (212) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Press and hold</strong></td>
<td>Voice memo is recorded while button is held down. Recording will end automatically after 60s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Press to start/stop</strong></td>
<td>Recording begins when button is pressed and ends when button is pressed again. Recording will end automatically after 60s.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Playing Voice Memos

Voice memos can be played back over the camera’s built-in speaker when the associated image is viewed in single-frame playback or highlighted in the thumbnail list. The presence of a voice memo is indicated by an icon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Press</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start/end playback</td>
<td></td>
<td>Press to start playback. Playback will end when button is pressed again or entire memo has been played back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete voice memo</td>
<td></td>
<td>Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Image/Sound</strong>: Delete both photo and voice memo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Sound only</strong>: Delete voice memo only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To exit without deleting image or voice memo, press multi selector left or right.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interrupting Playback

Playback will end automatically if:
- The button is pressed to display the menus
- The monitor is turned off by pressing the button or by pressing the shutter-release button halfway
- The camera is turned off
- Another image is displayed (single-image playback) or another thumbnail is highlighted (thumbnail playback).
**Voice Memo Playback Options**

The **Audio output** option in the setup menu controls whether voice memos are played back over the camera’s built-in speaker or by a device to which the camera is connected via the EG-D2 audio/video cable. When sound is played back over the built-in speaker, the **Audio output** option also controls playback volume.

Highlight **Audio output** in the setup menu (212) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Via speaker</strong> (default)</td>
<td>Voice memos are played back over built-in speaker. Selecting this option displays menu shown at right. Press multi selector up or down to highlight desired volume. Beep will sound when option highlighted. Press multi selector to right to make selection and return to setup menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Via VIDEO OUT</strong></td>
<td>Audio signal output to A/V-OUT terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Off</strong></td>
<td>Video memos are not played back. 📡 icon is displayed when photo for which voice memo exists is viewed in monitor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Changes to a variety of camera settings are made with the help of menus that appear in the camera monitor. This chapter covers:

**The Playback Menu**
The playback menu contains options for managing the images stored on memory cards, and for playing pictures back in automated slide shows.

**The Shooting Menu**
The shooting menu contains advanced shooting options, such as image sharpening and tone compensation.

**Custom Settings**
The CSM (Custom Settings) menu controls fine details of camera operation.

**The Setup Menu**
This menu is used for basic camera setup operations, including formatting memory cards and setting the time and date.
The playback menu contains the following options:

- **Delete**
- **Playback folder**
- **Slide show**
- **Hide image**
- **Print set**
- **Display mode**
- **Image review**
- **After delete**

The playback menu is not displayed if no memory card is inserted.

### Delete

To display the delete menu, highlight **Delete** and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selected</td>
<td>Delete selected photographs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Delete all photographs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### High-Capacity Memory Cards

If the memory card contains a large number of files or folders and the number of pictures to be deleted is very large, deletion can sometimes take more than half an hour.

### Protected and Hidden Images

Images marked with a ![icon] icon are protected and can not be deleted. Hidden images (154) are not displayed in the thumbnail list and can not be selected for deletion.

### Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.
Deleting Selected Photographs: Selected
Choosing Selected displays the photographs in the folder or folders selected in the Playback folder menu (150) as small thumbnail images.

1 Highlight image. (To view highlighted image full screen, press . Press again to return to thumbnail list.)

2 Select highlighted image. Selected image marked by icon.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures. To deselect picture, highlight and press center of multi selector. To exit without deleting pictures, press button.

4 Confirmation dialog displayed. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to select.
   • Yes: delete selected pictures and any associated voice memos
   • No: exit without deleting images

Deleting All Photographs: All
Choosing All displays the confirmation dialog shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the button to make a selection.
   • Yes: delete all images in the folder or folders selected in the Playback folder menu (150), together with any associated voice memos. Pictures that are protected or hidden will not be deleted.
   • No: exit without deleting images.
**Playback Folder**

To display the playback folder menu, highlight **Playback folder** in the playback menu (148) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NCD2H</td>
<td>Images in all folders created by the D2H will be visible during playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Images in all folders created by cameras that conform to the Design Rule for Camera File System (DCF)—all Nikon digital cameras and most other makes of digital camera—will be visible during playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>Only images in the current folder will be visible during playback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Selecting a Folder for Storage**

The **Active folder** option in the shooting menu is used to create new folders and to select the folder in which subsequent photographs will be stored (165).

**“Current”**

If multiple folders are created using the **Active folder > New** option in the shooting menu (165), only photographs in the folder selected in the **Active folder** menu will be played back when **Current** is selected for **Playback folder**. To view photographs in other folders, select **NCD2H** or **All**.

**Creating a Folder at Startup**

If the **button is pressed when the camera is turned on, a new folder will be created if no empty folders are already present on the memory card. The folder number for the new folder will be one greater than largest folder number on the card. No folder will be created if the largest folder number on the card is 999.**
**Slide Show**

To play images back one after the other in an automated “slide show,” highlight **Slide show** in the playback menu (148) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Start slide show.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame intvl</td>
<td>Choose how long each picture will be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio playback</td>
<td>Display menu of voice memo playback options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Starting the Slide Show: Start**

Selecting **Start** starts an automated slide show. All photographs in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (150) will be played back in the order recorded, with a pause between each image. Hidden photographs (154) will not be played back. The following operations can be performed during a slide show:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Press</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Go forward or back one frame</td>
<td></td>
<td>Press multi selector up to return to previous frame, down to skip to next frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View photo info</td>
<td></td>
<td>Press multi selector left or right to change photo info displayed during slide show.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Press <strong>ENTER</strong> to pause slide show (152).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit to playback menu</td>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>Press <strong>MENU</strong> to end slide show and display playback menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit to playback mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>Press **** to end slide show and return to playback with current image displayed in monitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit to shooting mode</td>
<td>Shutter release</td>
<td>Press shutter-release button halfway to end slide show, turn monitor off, and return to shooting mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The dialog shown at right is displayed when the show ends or when the button is pressed to pause playback. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

- **Restart**: Resume slide show.
- **Frame intvl**: Change the length of time each picture is displayed.
- **Audio playback**: Display a menu of voice memo playback options.

To exit the slide show and return to the playback menu, press the multi selector to the left or press the button.

### Changing the Display Interval: Frame Intvl

Selecting Frame intvl from the Slide show menu or the pause menu displays the menu shown at right. To change the length of time each image is displayed, press the multi selector up or down to highlight the appropriate option and then press the multi selector to the right to return to the previous menu.
Voice Memo Playback Options: *Audio Playback*

Selecting *Audio playback* from the *Slide show* menu or the pause menu displays the menu shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

- **On**: voice memos are played back during slide shows. The menu shown at right will be displayed; press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frame intvl</td>
<td>Playback will end when next frame is displayed, even if entire memo has not been played.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of voice menu</td>
<td>Next frame will not be displayed until entire memo has been played, even if frame interval is shorter than voice memo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Off**: voice memos will not be played back during slide shows.
**Hide Image**

The **Hide image** option is used to hide or reveal selected photographs. Hidden images are visible only in the **Hide image** menu, and can only be deleted by formatting the memory card.

Highlight **Hide image** in the playback menu (148) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select/set</td>
<td>Hide or reveal selected photographs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deselect all?</td>
<td>Reveal all photographs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hiding Selected Photographs: Select/Set**

Choosing **Select/set** displays the photographs in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (150) as small thumbnail images.

1. Highlight image. (To view highlighted image full screen, press . Press again to return to thumbnail list.)

2. Select highlighted image. Selected image marked by icon.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures. To deselect picture, highlight and press center of multi selector. To exit without changing hidden status of pictures, press button.

4. Complete operation and return to playback menu.
Revealing All Photographs: Deselect All

Choosing Deselect all? displays the confirmation dialog shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the button to make a selection.

- **Yes**: reveal all images in the folder or folders selected in the Playback folder menu (150). The monitor will briefly show the message “Hide image done,” and then the playback menu will be displayed.
- **No**: exit to the playback menu without changing the hidden status of images.

⚠️ File Attributes for Hidden Images

Hidden images have “hidden” and “read-only” status when viewed on a Windows computer. In the case of “NEF+JPEG” images, this marking applies to both the NEF (RAW) and JPEG image.

⚠️ Protected and Hidden Images

Removing protection from an image that is both hidden and protected will simultaneously reveal the image.
Print Set

Print set is used to create a digital “print order” that lists the photographs to be printed, the number of copies, and the information to be included on each print. This information is stored on the memory card in Digital Print Order Format (DPOF). The card can then be removed from the camera and used to print the selected images printed on any DPOF-compatible device.

Highlight Print set in the playback menu (148) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select/set</td>
<td>Select photographs for printing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deselect all?</td>
<td>Remove all images from print order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

nej Images

Images created at image quality settings of NEF (Raw) (41) can not be selected for printing using this option.

Taking Pictures for Direct Printing

When taking images to be printed without modification, set the Color mode option in the shooting menu to I (sRGB) or III (sRGB) (67).

After Creating a Print Order

After creating a print order, do not change the hidden status of images in the print order or use a computer or other device to delete images. Either action could cause problems during printing.

DPOF

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is an industry-wide standard that allows pictures to be printed from print orders stored on the memory card. Before printing, check that the printer or print service supports DPOF. Even without access to a DPOF-compatible device, images can still be printed using the software provided with the camera if the computer is connected to a color printer. Photofinishers that do not support DPOF may accept photographs for printing by e-mail, through web sites, or on removable media such as Zip disks. Contact the photofinisher for information on delivery and the file formats accepted.
Modifying the Print Order: Select/Set

Choosing **Select/set** displays the photographs in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (150) as small thumbnail images.

1. Highlight image. (To view highlighted image full screen, press **Zoom**. Press again to return to thumbnail list.)

2. Press **button** and press multi selector up or down to specify number of prints (up to 9), or press center of multi selector to select image and set number of prints to 1. Selected images are marked by icon.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures. To deselect picture, highlight and press center of multi selector. To exit without changing print order, press **button**.

4. Complete print order and display menu of print options. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option.
   - To print shutter speed and aperture on all pictures in print order, highlight **Data imprint** and press multi selector to right. ✔ will appear next to item.
   - To print date of recording on all pictures in print order, highlight **Imprint date** and press multi selector to right. ✔ will appear next to item.
   - To deselect checked item, highlight and press multi selector to right.

To complete print order and return to playback menu, highlight **Done** and press multi selector to right. To exit without altering print order, press **button**.
Removing All Images from the Print Order: Deselect All

Choosing **Deselect all?** displays the confirmation dialog shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the **OK** button to make a selection.

- **Yes:** remove all images in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (150) from the print order. The monitor will briefly show the message “Print set done,” and then the playback menu will be displayed.
- **No:** exit to the playback menu without changing the print order.

**Exif version 2.21**

The D2H supports Exif (Exchangeable Image File Format for Digital Still Cameras) version 2.21, a standard that allows information stored with photographs to be used for optimal color reproduction when images are output on Exif-compliant printers.
Display Mode

Display mode determines what information is included in the photo-information display (132). Highlight Display mode in the playback menu (148) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection. A ✔ appears next to selected items; to deselect, highlight and press the multi selector to the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data*</td>
<td>Include shooting data in photo information display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histogram*</td>
<td>Include histogram in photo information display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlights*</td>
<td>Include highlights in photo information display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus area</td>
<td>Active focus area (if single-servo AF is used with dynamic-area AF, group dynamic-AF, or closest-subject priority, area where focus first locked) is shown in red in photo information display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Default selection.

To exit the display mode menu and return to the playback menu, highlight Done and press the multi selector to the right.

Image Review

Image review controls whether or not photographs are displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting. Highlight Image review in the playback menu (148) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Photographs are not automatically displayed after shooting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Photographs are automatically displayed after shooting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**After Delete**

*After delete* determines whether the following or previous photograph is displayed after an image is deleted. Highlight *After delete* in the playback menu (148) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Show next</strong></td>
<td>After image is deleted, following image is displayed in monitor (single-image playback) or highlighted in thumbnail list (thumbnail playback). If deleted image was last frame in memory, previous frame will be displayed or highlighted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Show previous</strong></td>
<td>After image is deleted, previous image is displayed in monitor (single-image playback) or highlighted in thumbnail list (thumbnail playback). If deleted image was first frame in memory, following frame will be displayed or highlighted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continue as before</strong></td>
<td>If user was scrolling through images in order recorded before deletion, following image will be displayed or highlighted (if deleted image was last frame in memory, previous frame will be displayed or highlighted). If user was scrolling through images in reverse order, previous image will be displayed or highlighted (if deleted image was first frame in memory, following frame will be displayed or highlighted).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The shooting menu contains two pages of options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shooting menu bank</td>
<td>162–163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset shooting menu</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active folder</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File name</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image quality</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image size</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raw compression</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White bal.</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image sharpening</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tone compensation</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color mode</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hue adjustment</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intvl timer shooting</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-CPU lens data</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To display the second page of options, highlight ISO and press the multi selector down, or highlight Shooting menu bank and press the multi selector up. To return to the first page, highlight White bal. and press the multi selector up, or highlight Non-CPU lens data and press the multi selector down.

Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.
**Shooting Menu Bank**

Shooting menu settings are stored in one of four banks. Changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four shooting menu banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the Rename option.

To display the bank menu, highlight **Shooting menu bank** in the shooting menu (161) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A* (default)</td>
<td>Select bank A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B*</td>
<td>Select bank B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C*</td>
<td>Select bank C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D*</td>
<td>Select bank D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rename</td>
<td>Rename selected bank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Descriptive caption will also be displayed if bank has been renamed.

**Sensitivity (ISO Equivalency)**

If a bank in which ISO has been set to HI-1 or HI-2 is chosen after **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto; 182), sensitivity (ISO equivalency) will not be adjusted automatically.

**Shooting Menu Bank**

The rear control panel shows the bank currently selected in the shooting menu bank menu.
Renaming Shooting Menu Banks

1 Highlight Rename and press the multi selector to the right.

2 A list of shooting menu banks will be displayed. Highlight the desired bank and press the multi selector to the right.

3 The following dialog will be displayed. Enter a name as described below.

Keyboard area
Use multi selector to highlight letters, press center of multi selector to select.

Name area
Name appears here. To move cursor, press button and use multi selector.

To move the cursor in the name area, press the button and use the multi selector. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the button. To return to the shooting menu without changing the bank name, press the button.

Bank names can be up to twenty characters long. Any characters after the twentieth will be deleted.

4 After editing the name, press to return to the bank menu.
Reset Shooting Menu

To restore default settings for the current shooting menu bank (162), highlight **Reset shooting menu** in the shooting menu (161) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Exit menu, leaving settings unchanged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Restore settings to default values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following settings are affected:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File name</td>
<td>DSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image quality</td>
<td>JPEG Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image size</td>
<td>Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raw compression</td>
<td>Comp. NEF (Raw)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White bal.</td>
<td>Auto*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image sharpening</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tone compensation</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color mode</td>
<td>I (sRGB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hue</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Fine tuning reset to 0.

Two-Button Reset (128)

Default settings for image quality, image size, white balance, and sensitivity (ISO equivalency) can also be restored by performing a two-button reset.

Creating a Folder at Startup

If the button is pressed when the camera is turned on, a new folder will be created if no empty folders are already present on the memory card. Note that no folder will be created if the most recent folder is numbered 999.
Active Folder
To select the folder in which subsequent images will be stored, highlight Active folder in the shooting menu (161) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option | Description
--- | ---
New | Dialog shown at right will be displayed; press multi selector up or down to choose number for new folder. Press multi selector to right to create new folder and return to shooting menu. Subsequent photographs will be stored in new folder.
Select folder | List of existing folders will be displayed; press multi selector up or down to highlight folder, press to right to select and return to shooting menu. Subsequent photographs will be stored in selected folder.

⚠️ Number of Folders
Additional time will be required for recording and playback if the memory card contains a very large number of folders.

⚠️ Automatic Folder Creation
If the current folder contains 999 files, or if sequential file numbering (191) is on and the current folder contains a picture numbered 9999, the camera will automatically create a new folder for the next picture by adding one to the current folder number. If the memory card already contains a folder numbered 999, the shutter release will be disabled. If sequential file numbering is on, the shutter release will also be disabled if the current folder is numbered 999 and contains a picture numbered 9999. To continue shooting, create a folder with a number less than 999, or select an existing folder with a number less than 999 and less than 999 images.
File Name

Photographs are saved using file names consisting of “DSC_” or “_DSC” followed by a four-digit file number and a three-letter extension (e.g., “DSC_0001.JPG”). The File name option is used to change the “DSC” portion of the file name. Highlight File name in the shooting menu (161) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed; press the multi selector to the right to display the following dialog.

Keyboard area
Use multi selector to highlight letters, press center of multi selector to select.

File name area
File name appears here. To move cursor left or right, press button and use multi selector.

To move the cursor left or right in the file name area, press the button and use the multi selector. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the button. To return to the shooting menu without changing the comment, press the button.

After editing the file name, press to return to the shooting menu. New photographs will be saved using the new file name.
**Image Quality**
Eight options are available for image quality. See “Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size” (41).

**Image Size**
Image size can be selected from Large (2464 × 1632 4.0M) and Medium (1840 × 1224 2.2M). See “Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size” (45).

**Raw Compression**
Choose whether to compress NEF (RAW) images created at image-quality settings of RAW + JPEG (Fine), RAW + JPEG (Normal), RAW + JPEG (Basic), and NEF (Raw). See “Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size” (44).

**White Balance**
Nine options are available for white balance. See “Taking Photographs: White Balance” (51).
ISO

Sensitivity (ISO equivalency) can be increased from the default value, which is roughly equivalent to ISO 200. Settings of HI-1 and HI-2 are only available when Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto) is off. See “Taking Photographs: Sensitivity (ISO Equivalency)” (48).

Image Sharpening

Seven options are available for image sharpening. See “Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment” (65).

Tone Compensation

Five options are available for controlling image contrast. See “Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment” (66).

Color Mode

Choose from three color modes. See “Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment” (67).
Hue Adjustment
Hue can be set to values between approximately –9° and +9° in seven increments of roughly 3°. See “Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment” (69).

Interval Timer Shooting
Take photographs automatically at pre-selected intervals. See “Taking Photographs: Interval Timer Photography” (118).

Non-CPU Lens Data
If the focal length and maximum aperture have been specified in advance, the D2H supports such features as color matrix metering, aperture value display, and balanced fill flash with non-CPU lenses. See “Taking Photographs: Non-CPU Lenses” (124).
Custom settings are used to fine-tune a variety of camera settings to suit the user’s preferences, creating combinations of settings that differ from the factory defaults in effect at the time your camera was purchased. In addition to Custom Settings C (Bank select) and R (Menu reset), settings in the CSM (Custom Settings) menu are divided into the following six groups:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Custom Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Autofocus</strong></td>
<td>a1–a8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metering/Exposure</strong></td>
<td>b1–b6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Timers/AE&amp;AF Lock</strong></td>
<td>c1–c5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shooting/Display</strong></td>
<td>d1–d7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracketing/Flash</strong></td>
<td>e1–e8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Controls</strong></td>
<td>f1–f7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Press the multi selector up or down to highlight the desired group and then press the multi selector to the right. The full list of Custom Settings a1–f7 will be displayed, starting with the settings in the selected group. To select a setting in a different group, press the multi selector up or down scroll until the desired setting is displayed, or press the multi selector to the left to return the top menu and select a different group. Custom Setting a1 (AF-C mode priority) and f7 (No CF card?) are linked: pressing the multi selector up when Custom Setting a1 is highlighted displays Custom Setting f7, while pressing the multi selector down while Custom Setting f7 is highlighted displays Custom Setting a1.

**Using the Multi Selector**
The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.
The following Custom Settings are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C Bank select</td>
<td>Custom setting</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R Menu reset</td>
<td>Reset CSM menu</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Autofocus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a1 AF-C mode priority</td>
<td>AF-C priority Selection</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a2 AF-S mode priority</td>
<td>AF-S priority Selection</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a3 Group dynamic AF</td>
<td>Pattern selection in Group Dynamic AF</td>
<td>177–178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a4 Disable Lock-On</td>
<td>Disable focus tracking with Lock-On</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a5 AF activation</td>
<td>AF activation</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a6 Focus area Illum</td>
<td>Focus area Illumination</td>
<td>180–181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a7 Focus area</td>
<td>Focus area select</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a8 Vertical AF ON</td>
<td>Vertical AF ON button function</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b Metering/Exposure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1 ISO auto</td>
<td>ISO auto control</td>
<td>182–183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b2 ISO step value</td>
<td>ISO step value</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b3 EV step</td>
<td>EV steps for exposure control</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b4 Exposure comp. EV</td>
<td>EV steps for exposure compensation</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b5 Exposure comp.</td>
<td>Easy exposure compensation</td>
<td>184–185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b6 Center weight</td>
<td>Center weight area</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c Timers/AE&amp;AF Lock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c1 AE Lock</td>
<td>AE Lock buttons</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c2 AE-L/AF-L</td>
<td>Assignment of AE-L/AF-L button</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c3 Auto meter-off</td>
<td>Auto meter-off delay</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c4 Self-timer</td>
<td>Self-timer delay</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c5 Monitor off</td>
<td>Monitor off delay</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Menu Guide—Custom Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shooting/Display</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d1 Shooting speed</td>
<td>CL-Mode shooting speed</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d2 Maximum shots</td>
<td>C-Mode max. shots</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d3 Exp. delay mode</td>
<td>Exposure delay mode</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d4 Long exp. NR</td>
<td>Long exposure noise reduction</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d5 File No. Seq.</td>
<td>File number sequence</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d6 Ctrl panel/finder</td>
<td>Control panel/viewfinder display</td>
<td>192–193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d7 Illumination</td>
<td>LCD Illumination</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracketing/Flash</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e1 Flash sync speed</td>
<td>Flash sync speed setting</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e2 Flash shutter spd</td>
<td>Slowest shutter speed when using flash</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e3 AA flash mode</td>
<td>AA flash mode</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e4 Modeling flash</td>
<td>Preview button activates modeling flash</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e5 Auto BKT set</td>
<td>Auto bracketing set</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e6 Manual mode bkting</td>
<td>Auto bracketing in M exposure mode</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e7 Auto BKT order</td>
<td>Auto bracketing order</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e8 Auto BKT selection</td>
<td>Auto bracketing selection method</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Controls</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f1 Center button</td>
<td>Multi selector center button</td>
<td>198–199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f2 Multi selector</td>
<td>When multi selector is pressed:</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f3 PhotoInfo/Playback</td>
<td>Role of multi selector in full-frame playback</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f4 FUNC. button</td>
<td>Assign FUNC. button</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f5 Command dials</td>
<td>Customize command dials</td>
<td>202–204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f6 Buttons and dials</td>
<td>Setting method for buttons and dials</td>
<td>204–205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f7 No CF card?</td>
<td>Disable shutter if no CF card</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Custom Setting C: Bank Select**

Custom Settings are stored in one of four banks. Changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four Custom Settings banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the Rename option as described in “The Shooting Menu: Shooting Menu Bank” (162).

To display the bank menu, highlight Bank select in the top level of the CSM menu (170) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A° (default)</td>
<td>Select bank A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B°</td>
<td>Select bank B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C°</td>
<td>Select bank C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D°</td>
<td>Select bank D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rename</td>
<td>Rename selected bank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Descriptive caption will also be displayed if bank has been renamed.

---

**Sensitivity (ISO Equivalency)**

If a bank in which On is selected for Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto; 182) is chosen after ISO has been set to HI-1 or HI-2, sensitivity (ISO equivalency) will not be adjusted automatically.
Custom Setting R: Menu Reset

To restore default settings for the current Custom Settings bank (173), highlight Menu reset in the top level of the CSM menu (170) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Exit menu, leaving settings unchanged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Restore settings to default values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two-Button Reset

Custom Settings are not reset when a two-button reset is performed (128).

Custom Settings Bank

If settings in the current bank have been modified from default values, the rear control panel display will show CUSTOM and the letter of the bank. An asterisk will be displayed next to the altered settings in the second level of the Custom Settings menu.
Default settings are listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a1   AF-C mode priority</td>
<td>FPS rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a2   AF-S mode priority</td>
<td>Focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a3   Group dynamic AF</td>
<td>Pattern 1/Closest subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a4   Disable Lock-On</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a5   AF activation</td>
<td>Shutter/AF-ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a6   Focus area Illum</td>
<td>Manual focus mode: On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a7   Focus area</td>
<td>No wrap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a8   Vertical AF ON</td>
<td>AF-ON+Focus area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1   ISO auto</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b2   ISO step value</td>
<td>1/3 step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b3   EV step</td>
<td>1/3 step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b4   Exposure comp. EV</td>
<td>1/3 step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b5   Exposure comp.</td>
<td>[+/-] &amp; CMD dial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b6   Center weight</td>
<td>φ 8 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c1   AE Lock</td>
<td>AE-L/AF-L button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c2   AE-L/AF-L</td>
<td>AE/AF Lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c3   Auto meter-off</td>
<td>6 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c4   Self-timer</td>
<td>10 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c5   Monitor off</td>
<td>20 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d1   Shooting speed</td>
<td>3 fps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d2   Maximum shots</td>
<td>40 frames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d3   Exp. delay mode</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d4   Long exp. NR</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d5   File No. Seq.</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d6   Cntrl panel/finder</td>
<td>Rear control panel ISO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d7   Illumination</td>
<td>Lamp on switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e1   Flash sync speed</td>
<td>1/250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e2   Flash shutter spd</td>
<td>1/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e3   AA flash mode</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e4   Modeling flash</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e5   Auto BKT set</td>
<td>AE &amp; flash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e6   Manual mode bkting</td>
<td>Flash/speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e7   Auto BKT order</td>
<td>MTR&gt;Under&gt;Over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e8   Auto BKT selection</td>
<td>Manual value select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f1   Center button</td>
<td>Shooting mode: Center AF area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f2   Multi selector</td>
<td>Do nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f3   PhotoInfo/Playback</td>
<td>Info ▲▼/PB ▲▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f4   FUNC. button</td>
<td>FV Lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f5   Command dials</td>
<td>Rotate direction: Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f6   Buttons and dials</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f7   No CF card?</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Custom Setting a1: AF-C Mode Priority**

This option controls whether photographs can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) or only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) in continuous-servo AF. Highlight **a1 AF-C mode priority** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FPS rate (default)</td>
<td>Photos can be taken whenever shutter-release button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPS rate + AF</td>
<td>Photos can be taken even when camera is not in focus. In continuous mode, frame rate slows for improved focus if subject is dark or low contrast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus</td>
<td>Photos can only be taken when in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting a2: AF-S Mode Priority**

This option controls whether photographs can be taken only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) or whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) in single-servo AF. Highlight **a2 AF-S mode priority** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Focus (default)</td>
<td>Photos can only be taken when in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Photos can be taken whenever shutter-release button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Custom Setting a3: Group Dynamic AF**

This option controls how focus areas are grouped in group dynamic-AF (76) and whether the camera gives priority to the subject in the center focus area of the selected group. Highlight a3 Group dynamic AF in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pattern 1/Closest subject (default)</td>
<td>Focus areas are grouped in pattern 1 (178). Camera automatically selects focus area containing subject closest to camera in current focus area group. If subject moves out of selected focus area, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas in same group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern 1/Center area</td>
<td>Focus areas are grouped in pattern 1 (178). Camera focuses on subject in center focus area of selected group. Because camera does not have to select focus area, less time is required for focus operation. If subject moves out of center focus area, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas in same group. Center focus area of selected group is highlighted in top control panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern 2/Closest subject</td>
<td>As for Pattern 1/Closest subject, except that focus areas are grouped in pattern 2 (178).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern 2/Center area</td>
<td>As for Pattern 1/Center area, except that focus areas are grouped in pattern 2 (178).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Focus areas are grouped as follows (illustrations show the display in the top control panel):

*The center focus-area group is selected by pressing the center of the multi selector once to activate the current center focus-area group and then pressing the center of the multi selector to toggle between “center 1” and “center 2.” “Center 2” is only available when **Center AF area** (the default option) is selected for **Center button** (Custom Setting f1) > **Shooting mode**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Closest subject</th>
<th>Pattern 1</th>
<th>Pattern 2 *</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Center area</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Diagram of focus area groups](image-url)
**Custom Setting a4: Disable Lock-on**

This option controls how autofocus adjusts to sudden large changes in the distance to the subject. Highlight a4 Disable lock-on in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No (default)</td>
<td>Camera waits before adjusting focus when distance to subject changes abruptly. Prevents camera from refocusing when subject is briefly obscured by objects passing through frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Camera immediately adjusts focus when distance to subject changes abruptly. Use when photographing series of subjects at varying distances in quick succession.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting a5: AF Activation**

This option controls whether both the shutter-release button and the AF-ON buttons can be used to initiate autofocus or whether autofocus is only initiated when one of the AF-ON buttons is pressed. Highlight a5 AF activation in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shutter/AF-ON</td>
<td>Autofocus can be performed with AF-ON buttons or by pressing shutter-release button halfway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-ON only</td>
<td>Autofocus can only be performed using AF-ON buttons.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting a6: Focus Area Illum

The options in this menu control when the focus areas are illuminated and for how long. Highlight a6 Focus area Illum in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

**Manual Focus Mode**

This option controls whether the active focus frame is displayed in manual focus mode. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On (default)</td>
<td>Active focus area displayed when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Focus areas not displayed in manual focus mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Continuous Mode**

This option controls whether the active focus frame is displayed in CH (continuous high-speed) or CL (continuous low-speed) mode. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On (default)</td>
<td>Active focus area displayed in continuous mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Focus areas not displayed in continuous mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**When Selected**
This option determines how long the active focus frame is displayed when selected. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.2 s</td>
<td>Active focus area displayed for 0.2 s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 s</td>
<td>Active focus area displayed for 1 s.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting a7: Focus Area**
By default, the focus-area display is bounded by the four outer focus areas so that, for example, pressing the multi selector up when the top focus area is selected has no effect. Focus-area selection can be changed to “wrap around” from top to bottom, bottom to top, right to left, and left to right. Highlight **a7 Focus area** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No wrap</td>
<td>Wrap-around disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrap</td>
<td>Wrap-around enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting a8: *Vertical AF-ON*

This option determines what functions are assigned to the AF-ON button for vertical shooting. Highlight **a8 Vertical AF-ON** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AF-ON+ Focus area</td>
<td>Pressing vertical AF-ON button initiates autofocus. Focus area can be selected by pressing vertical AF-ON button and rotating sub-command dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-ON</td>
<td>Pressing vertical AF-ON button initiates autofocus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE/AF-L+ Focus area</td>
<td>Pressing vertical AF-ON button locks focus and exposure. Focus area can be selected by pressing vertical AF-ON button and rotating sub-command dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE/AF-L</td>
<td>Pressing vertical AF-ON button locks focus and exposure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus area</td>
<td>Vertical AF-ON button controls focus-area selection only. Focus area can be selected by pressing vertical AF-ON button and rotating sub-command dial.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Custom Setting b1: *ISO Auto*

If **On** is selected for this option, the camera will automatically adjust sensitivity (ISO equivalency) if the limits of the camera exposure system are exceeded at the sensitivity selected by the user (exposure modes P, S, and A) or if optimal exposure can not be achieved at the shutter speed and aperture selected in manual exposure mode. If sensitivity is set to HI-1 (approximately equivalent to ISO 3200) or HI-2 (approximately equivalent to ISO 6400), this option is automatically set to **Off** and can not be adjusted.

*Noise*

Noise is more likely to appear in photographs taken at higher sensitivities.
Highlight **b1 ISO auto** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Off</strong> (default)</td>
<td>Sensitivity remains fixed at value selected by user, regardless of whether optimal exposure can be achieved at current exposure settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>On</strong></td>
<td>When optimal exposure can not be achieved at sensitivity selected by user, sensitivity is adjusted to compensate, to minimum approximately equivalent to ISO 200 and maximum approximately equivalent to ISO 1600. Sensitivity can not be set to HI-1 or HI-2 while this option is in effect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When **On** is selected, the rear control-panel display shows **ISO-AUTO**. **ISO-A** appears in the viewfinder sidebar.

**Custom Setting b2: ISO Step Value**

This option determines whether adjustments to sensitivity (ISO equivalency) are made in increments equivalent to ⅓EV (1/3 step, the default option), ½EV (1/2 step), or 1EV (1 step). Highlight **b2 ISO step value** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

**Bank Select**

If a shooting menu bank in which ISO has been set to HI - 1 or HI - 2 is chosen after **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1, sensitivity (ISO equivalency) will not be adjusted automatically. Sensitivity will also not be adjusted automatically if a Custom Settings bank in which **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 is chosen after ISO has been set to HI - 1 or HI - 2.

**CH Mode**

When Custom Setting b1 (ISO auto) is on and sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user, the maximum shooting speed in CH (continuous high-speed) mode is seven frames per second.
**Custom Setting b3: EV Step**

This option determines whether adjustments to shutter speed, aperture, and bracketing are made in increments equivalent to $1/3$ EV (1/3 step, the default option), $1/2$ EV (1/2 step), or 1 EV (1 step). Highlight **b3 EV step** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

**Custom Setting b4: Exposure Comp. EV**

This option determines whether adjustments to exposure compensation are made in increments equivalent to $1/3$ EV (1/3 step, the default option), $1/2$ EV (1/2 step), or 1 EV (1 step). Highlight **b4 Exposure comp. EV** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

**Custom Setting b5: Exposure Comp.**

This option controls whether the button is needed to set exposure compensation (97). If **CMD Dial only** is selected, the 0 at the center of the exposure display will blink even when exposure compensation is set to ±0.
Highlight **b5 Exposure comp.** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[+/-] &amp; CMD Dial</td>
<td>Exposure compensation set by pressing button and rotating main command dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMD Dial only</td>
<td>Exposure compensation set by rotating command dial only. Dial used depends on option selected for Custom Setting f5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting f5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure mode</th>
<th>Custom Setting f5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Sub-command dial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Sub-command dial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Main command dial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Sub-command dial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting b6: Center Weight**

When calculating exposure, center-weighted metering assigns the greatest weight to a circle in the center of the frame. The diameter (φ) of this circle can be selected from 6, 8, 10, and 13 mm (the default option is 8 mm). Highlight **b6 Center weight** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

**Non-CPU Lenses**

The option chosen for Custom Setting b6 applies only to CPU lenses. When a non-CPU lens is attached, the size of the area assigned the greatest weight in center-weighted metering is 8 mm, regardless of the option selected for Custom Setting b6 or for the **Non-CPU lens data** option in the shooting menu.
Custom Setting c1: AE Lock
This option controls whether exposure locks while the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Highlight **c1 AE Lock** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AE-L/AF-L Button</td>
<td>Exposure can only be locked by pressing AE-L/AF-L button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+Release Button</td>
<td>Exposure can be locked by pressing AE-L/AF-L button or by pressing shutter-release button halfway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Custom Setting c2: AE-L/AF-L
This option controls the behavior of the AE-L/AF-L button. Highlight **c2 AE-L/AF-L** in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AE/AF Lock</td>
<td>Both focus and exposure lock while AE-L/AF-L button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE Lock only</td>
<td>Exposure locks while AE-L/AF-L button is pressed. Focus is unaffected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE Lock hold/reset</td>
<td>Exposure locks when AE-L/AF-L button is pressed and remains locked until button is pressed again, shutter is released or exposure meters turn off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE Lock hold</td>
<td>Exposure locks when AE-L/AF-L button is pressed and remains locked until button is pressed again or exposure meters turn off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Lock</td>
<td>Focus locks while AE-L/AF-L button is pressed. Exposure is unaffected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting c3: Auto Meter-Off
This option controls how long the camera continues to meter exposure when no operations are performed: 4 s, 6 s (the default option), 8 s, or 16 s or until the camera is turned off (No limit). Highlight c3 Auto meter-off in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection. Choose a shorter meter-off delay for longer battery life.

Custom Setting c4: Self-Timer
This option controls the length of the shutter-release delay in self-timer mode. Shutter-release can be delayed by approximately 2 s, 5 s, 10 s (the default option), or 20 s. Highlight c4 Self-timer in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Custom Setting c5: Monitor Off
This option controls how long the monitor remains on when no operations are performed: 10 s, 20 s (the default option), 1 minute, 5 minutes, or 10 minutes. Highlight c5 Monitor off in the second level of the CSM menu (171) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection. Choose a shorter monitor-off delay for longer battery life.

The EH-6 AC Adapter
When the camera is powered by an optional EH-6 AC adapter, exposure meters will not turn off and the monitor will only power off after ten minutes, regardless of the options chosen for Custom Settings c3 (Auto meter-off) and c5 (Monitor off).
Custom Setting d1: **Shooting Speed**

This option determines the rate at which photographs can be taken in **CL** (continuous low-speed) mode. Shooting speed can be set to values between 1 and 7 frames per second (fps); the default value is 3 fps. Highlight **d1 Shooting speed** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Custom Setting d2: **Maximum Shots**

The maximum number of shots that can be taken in a single burst in continuous mode can be set to the following values:

- Compressed NEF (RAW) + JPEG: 1–24
- Uncompressed NEF (RAW) + JPEG: 1–25
- Compressed NEF (RAW): 1–25
- Uncompressed NEF (RAW): 1–26
- TIFF (RGB): 1–35
- JPEG: 1–40

Highlight **d2 Maximum shots** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

**Shutter Speed**

At slow shutter speeds, the shooting speed may be slower than the value selected for Custom Setting d1.

**Interval Timer Photography**

During interval timer photography, Custom Setting d1 also determines the shooting speed in **S** (single frame) and **M-up** modes.
Custom Setting d3: *Exp. Delay Mode*

Shutter release can be delayed until about 0.4 s after the shutter-release button is pressed, reducing camera shake in situations in which the least camera movement could result in blurred photographs (for example, microscope photography). Highlight **d3 Exp. delay mode** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Shutter is released when shutter-release button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Shutter is released about 0.4 s after shutter-release button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting d4: Long Exp. NR

This option controls whether photographs taken at shutter speeds slower than about ½s are processed to reduce “noise” (randomly-spaced, brightly-colored pixels that appear at slow shutter speeds, particularly in shadows). Highlight d4 Long Exp. NR in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off (default)</td>
<td>Noise reduction off; camera functions normally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Noise reduction takes effect at shutter speeds of about ½s or slower. Time required to process images more than doubles. During processing, \textit{Job nr} blinks in shutter-speed and aperture displays. Next photo can be taken when \textit{Job nr} is no longer displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Playback**

If photographs are played back while they are being processed to reduce noise, the image that is displayed in the monitor may not show the effects of noise reduction.

**The Memory Buffer**

The maximum number of shots that can be stored in the memory buffer when noise reduction is on is as follows:

- Compressed NEF + JPEG Fine: 14
- Compressed NEF + JPEG Normal: 14
- Compressed NEF + JPEG Basic: 14
- Compressed NEF (RAW): 15
- TIFF (RGB): 15
-jpeg Normal: 30
- Uncompressed NEF + JPEG Fine: 15
- Uncompressed NEF + JPEG Normal: 15
- Uncompressed NEF + JPEG Basic: 15
- Uncompressed NEF (RAW): 16
- JPEG Fine: 30
- JPEG Basic: 30
**Custom Setting d5: File No. Seq.**

When a photograph is taken, the camera names the file new by adding one to the last file number used. This option controls whether file numbering continues from the last number used when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera. Highlight **d5 File No. Seq.** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Off</strong> (default)</td>
<td>File numbering reset to 0001 when new folder is created, memory card is formatted or new memory card is inserted in camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>On</strong></td>
<td>When new folder is created, memory card is formatted, or new memory card inserted in camera, file numbering continues from last number used or from largest number in current folder, whichever is higher. If photograph is taken when current folder contains photograph numbered 9999, new folder will be created automatically and file numbering will begin again from 0001.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reset</strong></td>
<td>As for <strong>On</strong>, except that next photograph taken is assigned file number by adding one to largest file number in current folder. If selected folder contains no photographs, file numbering reset to 0001.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting d6: Cntrl Panel/Finder

The options in this menu control the information displayed in the viewfinder and rear control panel. Highlight **d6 Cntrl panel/finder** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

**Rear Control Panel**

This option controls whether the rear control panel shows sensitivity (ISO equivalency) or the number of exposures remaining. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISO (default)</td>
<td>Rear control panel shows sensitivity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposures remaining</td>
<td>Rear control panel shows number of exposures remaining. Sensitivity displayed only while ISO button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Viewfinder Display**
This option controls whether the viewfinder shows the frame count or number of exposures remaining (note that regardless of the option selected, the number of frames that can be stored in the memory buffer will be shown while the shutter-release button is pressed). Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Frame count</strong></td>
<td>Viewfinder shows frame count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exposures remaining</strong></td>
<td>Viewfinder shows number of exposures remaining.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting d7: Illumination**
This option controls the control panel backlights (LCD illuminators). Highlight **d7 Illumination** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lamp on switch</strong></td>
<td>Control panels illuminate only while power switch is rotated to position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Any button</strong></td>
<td>Control panels illuminate whenever exposure meters are active (note that this increases drain on battery).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting e1: Flash Sync Speed

This option controls flash sync speed. Options range from $\frac{1}{250}$ s (1/250, the default setting) and $\frac{1}{60}$ s (1/60). To enable auto FP high-speed sync when using an SB-800 Speedlight, select 1/250 (FP auto) (if the SB-800 is not attached when this option is selected, flash sync speed will be set to $\frac{1}{250}$ s). When the camera shows a shutter speed of $\frac{1}{250}$ s in exposure mode P or A, Auto FP High-Speed Sync will be activated if the actual shutter speed is faster than $\frac{1}{250}$ s.

Highlight e1 Flash sync speed in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Custom Setting e2: Flash Shutter Speed

This option determines the slowest shutter speed possible when using a flash in programmed auto or aperture-priority auto exposure mode (in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, shutter speeds can be set to values as slow as 30 s regardless of the setting chosen). Options range from $\frac{1}{60}$ s (1/60, the default setting) and 30 s (30").

Highlight e2 Flash shutter speed in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Fixing Shutter Speed at the Flash Sync Speed Limit

To fix shutter speed at the sync speed limit in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure modes, select next the shutter speed after the slowest possible shutter speed (30 s or $\frac{1}{2}$). An X will be displayed in the flash sync indicator in the top control panel.
Custom Setting e3: AA Flash Mode
This option controls whether flash level is automatically adjusted for aperture when an external exposure meter is used with an SB-80DX or SB-28DX Speedlight (in the case of the SB-800, the flash mode chosen with the Speedlight is used regardless of the option chosen for Custom Setting e3). Highlight e3 AA flash mode in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On (default)</td>
<td>Flash level automatically adjusted for aperture when external exposure meter is used with SB-80DX or SB-28DX Speedlight (auto aperture).*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Aperture specified manually using Speedlight controls (non-TTL auto).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* To use auto aperture with non-CPU lenses, specify maximum aperture of lens using Non-CPU lens data option in shooting menu.

Custom Setting e4: Modeling Flash
This option determines whether the SB-800 emits a modeling flash when the depth-of-field preview button is pressed. Highlight e4 Modeling flash in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On (default)</td>
<td>SB-800 emits modeling flash when depth-of-field is previewed (106).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>No modeling flash emitted when depth-of-field preview button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting e5: *Auto BKT Set*

This option controls what settings are affected when auto bracketing is in effect. Highlight **e5 Auto BKT set** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AE &amp; flash (default)</td>
<td>Camera performs exposure and flash-level bracketing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE only</td>
<td>Camera performs exposure bracketing only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash only</td>
<td>Camera performs flash-level bracketing only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WB bracketing</td>
<td>Camera performs white balance bracketing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**White Balance Bracketing**

White balance bracketing is not available at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or NEF+JPEG.
Custom Setting e6: Manual Mode Bkting

This option controls what settings are affected when **AE & flash** or **AE only** is selected for Custom Setting e5 in manual exposure mode. Highlight **e6 Manual mode bkting** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flash/speed (default)</td>
<td>Camera varies shutter speed (Custom Setting e5 set to <strong>AE only</strong>) or shutter speed and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to <strong>AE &amp; flash</strong>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash/speed/aperture</td>
<td>Camera varies shutter speed and aperture (Custom Setting e5 set to <strong>AE only</strong>) or shutter speed, aperture, and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to <strong>AE &amp; flash</strong>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash/aperture</td>
<td>Camera varies aperture (Custom Setting e5 set to <strong>AE only</strong>) or aperture speed and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to <strong>AE &amp; flash</strong>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash only</td>
<td>Camera varies flash level only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- If no flash is attached when Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**) is on, camera will vary sensitivity only, regardless of setting selected.
- Flash bracketing performed only with iTTL or AA flash control.

Custom Setting e7: Auto BKT Order

This option controls the order in which bracketing is performed. Highlight **e7 Auto BKT order** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MTR&gt;Under&gt;Over (default)</td>
<td>Bracketing performed in order described in “Bracketing” (98).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under&gt;MTR&gt;Over</td>
<td>Bracketing proceeds in order from lowest to highest value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting e8: Auto BKT Selection

This option controls how the bracketing program is selected. Highlight **e8 Auto BKT selection** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manual value select</td>
<td>Pressing BKT button, rotate main command dial to select number of shots, sub-command dial to select bracketing increment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preset value select</td>
<td>Press BKT button and rotate main command dial to turn bracketing on and off. Press BKT button and rotate sub-command dial to select number of shots and bracketing increment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Custom Setting f1: Center Button

This option determines what operations can be performed by pressing the center of the multi selector. Highlight **f1 Center button** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

**Shooting Mode**

This option controls what operation can be performed by pressing the center of the multi selector when the camera is in shooting mode.
Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Center AF area</strong></td>
<td>Pressing center of multi selector selects center focus area or center focus-area group (group dynamic-AF). If <strong>Pattern 2</strong> is selected for Custom Setting a3 (<strong>Group dynamic AF</strong>), center of multi selector can be used to toggle between center focus area groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Illuminate AF area</strong></td>
<td>Pressing center of multi selector illuminates active focus area or focus-area group (group dynamic-AF) in viewfinder.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Not used</strong></td>
<td>Pressing center of multi selector has no effect when camera is in shooting mode.*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Center of multi selector can not be used to toggle between center focus-area groups when **Pattern 2** is selected for Custom Setting a3 (**Group dynamic AF**).

**Playback Mode**
This option controls what operation is performed when the center of the multi selector is pressed in playback mode. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thumbnail on/off</strong></td>
<td>Press center of multi selector to toggle between single-image and thumbnail playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Histogram on/off</strong></td>
<td>Press center of multi selector to turn histogram display on and off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zoom on/off</strong></td>
<td>Press center of multi selector to zoom in on image, press again to return to full-frame display or thumbnail playback. When this option is selected, menu of zoom settings shown at right is displayed. Choose from 2x zoom, 3x zoom, and 4x zoom.*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Zoom settings refer to large images.
**Custom Setting f2: Multi Selector**

If desired, the multi selector can be used to activate the exposure meters or initiate autofocus. Highlight **f2 Multi selector** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do nothing (default)</td>
<td>Multi selector does not activate exposure meters or initiate autofocus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset mtr-off delay</td>
<td>Pressing multi selector activates exposure meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiate autofocus</td>
<td>In AF-S or AF-C mode, pressing multi selector activates exposure meters. Camera focuses while multi selector is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting f3: PhotoInfo/Playback**

By default, pressing the multi selector up or down during playback displays the other images on the memory card, while pressing the multi selector left or right changes the photo information displayed. These roles can be reversed using Custom Setting f3. Highlight **f3 PhotoInfo/Playback** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Info ▲▼/PB ▲▼ (default)</td>
<td>Press multi selector up or down to display additional images, left or right to change photo info displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info ▲▼/PB ◄►</td>
<td>Press multi selector up or down to change photo info displayed, left or right to display additional images.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Custom Setting f4: FUNC. Button**

This option controls the function performed by the FUNC. button. Highlight `f4 FUNC. Button` in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FV Lock (default)</td>
<td>If SB-800 Speedlight is attached, flash value locks while FUNC. button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FV Lock/Lens data</td>
<td>If SB-800 Speedlight is attached and on, flash value locks while FUNC. button is pressed. Otherwise focal length of non-CPU lens can be set with FUNC. button and main command dial, maximum aperture with FUNC. button and sub-command dial (124).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 step spd/aperture</td>
<td>If FUNC. button is pressed when rotating command dials, changes to shutter speed (exposure modes S and M) and aperture (exposure modes A and M) are made in increments of 1 EV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same as AE-L/AF-L</td>
<td>FUNC. button performs same functions as AE-L/AF-L button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash off</td>
<td>To temporarily disable flash, press shutter-release button while FUNC button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bracketing burst</td>
<td>While FUNC. button is pressed, all shots in exposure or flash bracketing program will be taken each time shutter-release button is pressed. In continuous high-speed and continuous low-speed modes, camera will repeat bracketing burst while shutter-release button is held down. If white-balance bracketing is selected, camera will take photos at up to 8 fps (single or continuous high-speed mode) or 1–7 fps (continuous low-speed mode) and perform white balance bracketing on each frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matrix metering</td>
<td>Matrix metering activated while FUNC. button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center-weighted</td>
<td>Center-weighted metering activated while FUNC. button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot metering</td>
<td>Spot metering activated while FUNC. button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Custom Setting f5: Command Dials

This option controls the operation of the main and sub-command dials. Highlight f5 Command dials in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

Rotate Direction

This option controls the direction of all command dials when setting flexible program, shutter speed, easy exposure compensation, exposure mode, exposure compensation value, bracketing increment, and flash sync mode. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal (default)</td>
<td>Normal command dial operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse</td>
<td>Reverses rotation of command dials.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Option Description
**Change Main/Sub**
This option can be used to exchange the functions of the main and sub-command dials when setting shutter speed and aperture. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off (default)</td>
<td>Main command controls shutter speed, sub-command dial controls aperture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Main command dial controls aperture, sub-command controls shutter speed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aperture Setting**
This option controls whether changes to aperture are made using the lens aperture ring or the command dials. Regardless of the setting chosen, the lens ring must be used to set aperture for non-CPU lenses and the command dials to set aperture for type G lenses not equipped with an aperture ring. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sub-command dial (default)</td>
<td>Aperture can only be adjusted using sub-command dial (or main command dial if Change Main/Sub is On).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aperture ring</td>
<td>Aperture can only be adjusted using lens aperture ring. Camera aperture display shows aperture in increments of 1EV. This option is selected automatically when non-CPU lens is attached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Menus and Playback**

This option controls the functions performed by the command dials during playback or when menus are displayed. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off (default)</td>
<td>Multi selector used to choose picture displayed, highlight thumbnails, and navigate menus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| On         | Main command dial performs same function as pressing multi selector left or right. Sub-command dial performs same function as pressing multi selector up or down.  
             | • **Single-image playback**: main command dial is used to choose picture displayed, sub-command dial to display additional photo information.  
             | • **Thumbnail playback**: main command dial moves cursor left or right, sub-command dial moves cursor up or down.  
             | • **Menu navigation**: main command dial moves highlight bar up or down. Rotate sub-command dial to right to display sub-menu, to left to return to previous menu. To make selection, press multi selector to right, press center of multi selector, or press button. |

**Custom Setting f6: Buttons and Dials**

Normally, changes to settings that involve both a command dial and a button are made by rotating the command dial while the button is held down. If desired, this can be changed so that the buttons do not have to be held down while the command dial is rotated.
Highlight **f6 Buttons and dials** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default</strong> (default)</td>
<td>Changes to settings made by rotating command dial while button is held down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong></td>
<td>Settings can be changed by rotating command dial even after button is released. To put change into effect and return to normal operation, press button again, press shutter-release button halfway, or press MODE, ISO, QUAL, or WB button. Unless auto meter off is set to <strong>No limit</strong> or the camera is powered by optional EH-6 AC adapter, normal functioning will be restored automatically if no operations are performed for about 20 s.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Custom Setting f7: No CF Card?**

This option can be used to enable the shutter release when no memory card is inserted in the camera. Note that when photographs are being captured to a computer using Nikon Capture 4 Camera Control, photographs are not recorded to the camera memory card and the shutter release will be enabled regardless of the setting chosen for this option.

Highlight **f7 No CF card?** in the second level of the CSM menu (172) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>On</strong> (default)</td>
<td>Shutter-release button disabled when no memory card is inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Off</strong></td>
<td>Shutter-release button enabled even when no memory card is inserted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The setup menu contains three pages of options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Format</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD brightness</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirror lock-up</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video mode</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image comment</td>
<td>210–211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto image rotation</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice memo</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice memo protect</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice memo button</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio output</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dust Off ref photo</td>
<td>214–215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery info</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless LAN†</td>
<td>217–219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware version</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Available only when optional EH-6 AC adapter is connected.
† Available only when optional WT-1/WT-1A wireless transmitter is connected.

Using the Multi Selector
The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.
Format

Memory cards must be formatted before first use. Formatting memory cards is also an effective way of deleting all pictures on the card. To format a memory card, highlight **Format** in the setup menu ( 206) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight one of the following options and then press the **OK** button:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Exit without formatting memory card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Format memory card. Message shown at right displayed while formatting is in progress. <strong>Do not turn the camera off, remove the batteries or memory card, or unplug the AC adapter (available separately) until formatting is complete and setup menu is displayed.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**During Formatting**

*Do not remove the memory card, remove the battery, or unplug the AC adapter (available separately) while formatting is in progress.*

**Before Formatting**

*Formatting memory cards permanently deletes all data they contain, including hidden and protected pictures and any other data that may be on the card.* Before formatting, be sure to transfer to a computer any pictures you would like to keep.

**FAT 32**

The D2H supports FAT 32, allowing use of memory cards with capacities of over 2 GB. FAT 16 is used when reformatting cards already formatted in FAT 16.

**Two-Button Format**

Memory cards can also be formatted with the **(mode) and ** buttons ( 23).
**LCD Brightness**

To adjust monitor brightness, highlight **LCD brightness** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed. Press the multi selector up to increase brightness, down to decrease. The number to the right of the display indicates the current brightness level, with +2 the brightest setting and –2 the darkest. Press the multi selector to the right to complete the operation and return to the setup menu.

**Mirror Lock-up**

This option is used to lock the mirror in the up position to allow inspection or cleaning of the low-pass filter that protects the LBCAST image sensor. See “Technical Notes: Caring for the Camera and Battery” (240).

Highlight **Mirror lock-up** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Mirror functions normally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image sensor cleaning</td>
<td>When shutter is released, mirror is locked in up position and blinking “---- --” is displayed in top control panel. Mirror will return to down position when camera is turned off. To ensure power is available to lower mirror, this option is only available when camera is powered by EH-6 AC adapter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Video Mode

Before connecting your camera to a video device such as a television or VCR (222), choose a video mode setting that matches the video standard used in the device. Highlight Video mode in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NTSC</td>
<td>Use when connecting camera to NTSC devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAL</td>
<td>Use when connecting camera to PAL devices. Note that number of pixels in output is selectively reduced, causing drop in resolution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Date

Date is used to set the camera clock to the current date and time. See “First Steps: Step 4—Set the Time and Date” (19).

Language

Use the Language option to choose a language for camera menus and messages. See “First Steps: Step 3—Choose a Language” (18).

Video Output

The default video standard varies with the country or region of purchase.
Image Comment

Using this option, brief texts comment can be added to photographs as they are taken. Comments can be viewed when the photographs are displayed using the software provided with the camera or Nikon Capture 4. The first twelve letters of the comment are also visible on the fourth page of the photo information display (133).

Highlight **Image comment** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

**Done**
Put changes to settings into effect and exit to setup menu.

**Input Comment**
Highlight **Input comment** and press the multi selector to the right. The following dialog will be displayed. Enter a comment as described below.

Keyboard area
Use multi selector to highlight letters, press center of multi selector to select.

To move the cursor in the comment area, press the button and use the multi selector. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the button. To return to the setup menu without changing the comment, press the button.

Comments can be up to thirty-six characters long. Any characters after the thirty-sixth will be deleted.

After editing the comment, press to return to the image comment menu.
Attach Comment
To add the comment to all subsequent photographs, highlight Attach comment in the input comment menu and press the multi selector to the right. A ✔ will appear in the box next to Attach comment; highlight Done and press the multi selector to the right to return to the setup menu.

To prevent the comment from being added to photographs, highlight Attach comment in the input comment menu and press the multi selector to the right to remove the check from Attach comment, then highlight Done and press the multi selector to the right to return to the setup menu.

Auto Image Rotation
The D2H is equipped with a built-in sensor that detects camera orientation. Information from this sensor can be embedded in photographs as they are taken, allowing portrait (tall) orientation photographs to be rotated automatically when displayed in the software provided with the camera or Nikon Capture 4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On (default)</td>
<td>Camera records whether shots are in landscape (wide) orientation, portrait (tall) orientation with the camera rotated 90° clockwise, or portrait (tall) orientation with the camera rotated 90° counter-clockwise.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landscape (wide) orientation</td>
<td>Camera rotated 90° clockwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Camera orientation is not recorded. Nikon Capture 4 and supplied software display all photographs in landscape (wide) orientation.†</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In Ch (continuous high speed) and Cl (continuous low speed) modes (70), orientation recorded for first shot applies to all images in same burst, even if camera orientation is changed during shooting.

† Camera may fail to record correct orientation in shots taken with lens pointing up or down. Choose Off to prevent camera from recording incorrect orientation.
**Voice Memo**

**Voice memo** contains options for recording voice memos in shooting mode. See “Voice Memos” (139).

**Voice Memo Protect**

The option selected for **Voice memo protect** determines whether the voice memo for the last photograph recorded can be overwritten when the camera is in shooting mode. See “Voice Memos” (139).

**Voice Memo Button**

This option controls operation of the Voice memo button. See “Voice Memos” (139).

**Audio Output**

This menu contains output options for voice memos. See “Voice Memos” (139).
**USB**

Before connecting the camera to a computer via USB (223), select the appropriate USB option as determined by the computer operating system and whether the camera is being controlled from Nikon Capture 4 Camera Control or photographs are being transferred to the computer using the transfer function included with the software provided with the camera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Transfer</th>
<th>Nikon Capture 4 Camera Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows XP Home Edition</td>
<td>Choose PTP or Mass Storage</td>
<td>Choose PTP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows XP Professional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac OS X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 2000 Professional</td>
<td>Choose Mass Storage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Millennium Edition (Me)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 98 Second Edition (SE)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac OS 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The default setting for **USB** is **Mass Storage**. To change the USB setting, highlight **USB** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight the desired option, then press the multi selector to the right.
Dust Off Ref Photo

This option is used to acquire reference data for the Image Dust Off function in Nikon Capture (for more information on Image Dust Off, see the Nikon Capture 4 User’s Manual).

1 **Dust Off ref photo** is only available when a CPU lens is mounted on the camera. We recommend using a lens with a focal length of at least 50 mm. If using a zoom lens, zoom in to the maximum telephoto position.

2 Highlight **Dust Off ref photo** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed.

3 Press the multi selector to the right. Camera settings will automatically be adjusted for Image Dust Off. The message shown at right will be displayed, and \( r^{EF} \) will be displayed in the viewfinder and control panels.

   ![Top control panel](image1)
   ![Rear control panel](image2)
   ![Viewfinder](image3)

To cancel the operation and return to the setup menu, press the button or press the multi selector to the right. The operation will also be cancelled when the camera or monitor is turned off.

Image Dust Off

The Image Dust Off feature in Nikon Capture 4 (available separately) processes NEF (RAW) photographs to remove the effects of dust in the camera imaging system by comparing the images to the data acquired with **Dust Off ref photo**. It is not available with TIFF (RGB) or JPEG images. The same reference data can be used for NEF (RAW) photographs taken with different lenses or at different apertures.
4 With the lens ten centimeters (four inches) from a bright, featureless white object, frame the object so that nothing else is visible in the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button halfway. In autofocus mode, focus will automatically be set to infinity; in manual focus mode, set focus to infinity manually before pressing the shutter-release button. If using the aperture ring to set aperture, choose the minimum setting (largest f/-number).

5 Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to acquire Image Dust Off reference data (note that noise reduction turns on automatically when the subject is poorly lit, increasing the amount of time needed to record the data). The monitor turns off when the shutter-release button is pressed.

If the reference object is too bright or too dark, the camera may be unable to acquire Image Dust Off reference data and the message shown at right will be displayed. Choose another reference object and repeat the process from Step 3.

⚠️ Image Dust Off Reference Data

Image Dust Off reference data are recorded to the memory card at an image quality of JPEG Fine and an image size of Large. When the resulting image is played back on the camera, a grid pattern is displayed and voice memos can not be recorded. Files created with Dust Off ref photo can not be viewed using computer imaging software.
**Battery Info**

To view information on the EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion battery currently inserted in the camera, highlight **Battery info** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Battery meter</strong></td>
<td>Current battery level expressed as a percentage (27).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Picture meter</strong></td>
<td>Number of times shutter has been released with current battery since battery was last charged. Note that camera may sometimes release shutter without recording photograph, for example when measuring value for preset white balance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Calibration** | • **Required**: due to repeated use and recharging, calibration is required to ensure that battery level can be measured accurately; recalibrate battery before charging (see MH-21 Quick Charger instructions for details).  
  • **Not required**: calibration not required. |
| **Charging life** | Five-level display showing battery age. 0 (**New**) indicates that battery performance has not been affected; 4 (**Replace**) indicates that battery has reached end of charging life and should be replaced. |
**Wireless LAN**
This option is only available when the optional WT-1/WT-1A wireless transmitter is mounted on the camera. To adjust wireless LAN settings, highlight **Wireless LAN** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right. See the WT-1/WT-1A *User’s Manual* for details.

**Transceiver**
Turn the WT-1/WT-1A transceiver on or off. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Transceiver off. Camera can not communicate with server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Transceiver on. Camera can communicate with server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Status**
Shows the current status of the link between the WT-1/WT-1A and the server. Press the multi selector to the right to return to the wireless LAN menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Status of server link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link quality</td>
<td>Five-level indicator of link quality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal level</td>
<td>Five-level indicator of signal strength.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Now sending</td>
<td>Name of file currently being sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remaining</td>
<td>Number of frames remaining to be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time left</td>
<td>Estimated time needed to send remaining data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Auto Send

Choose whether to transmit photographs to the server as they are taken. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off (default)</td>
<td>Photos not transmitted automatically after shooting. Photos can be selected for transmission in playback mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Photos transmitted to server automatically after recording. If transmission already in progress, photos will be sent in order taken.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Send File As

When sending images taken at settings of NEF+JPEG Fine, NEF+JPEG Normal, or NEF+JPEG Basic, choose whether to send both NEF and JPEG files or only the JPEG files. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEF(Raw)+JPEG (default)</td>
<td>Send both NEF and JPEG files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG only</td>
<td>Send JPEG files only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Send Folder

Entire folders can be selected for transmission to the server. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight the desired folder and then press the multi selector to the right to begin transmission of the selected folder and all files it contains.

USB

When using the WT-1/WT-1A, set the USB option in the camera setup menu to PTP (213).
**Deselect All?**

Choose whether to remove “send” and “sent” marking from all images on the memory card. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No (default)</td>
<td>“Send” and “sent” marking not removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>“Send” and “sent” marking removed from all files and folders.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Network Settings**

Adjust network settings for connection to the server. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Load settings file?</td>
<td>Load Wireless, TCP/IP, and FTP settings from camera memory card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless</td>
<td>Adjust settings for connection to wireless network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/IP</td>
<td>Adjust TCP/IP settings, including IP address, DNS, and gateway settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP</td>
<td>Enter password and user ID and adjust settings for connection to ftp server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Firmware Version**

To display the current camera firmware version, highlight **Firmware version** in the setup menu (206) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector to the left to return to the setup menu.
Photographs and camera menus can be displayed on a television screen or recorded to video tape. If the supplied software is installed, the camera can be connected to a computer and photographs copied to disk for editing, viewing, printing, or long-term storage.

*Television Playback*
Read this section for information on connecting the camera to a television or VCR.

*Connecting to a Computer*
This section describes how to connect the camera to a computer.
The supplied EG-D2 audio/video (AV) cable can be used to connect the D2H to a television or VCR for playback or recording.

1. Turn the camera off.

   **The EG-D2**
   Turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting the EG-D2.

2. Open the cover protecting the A/V-out and DC-in connectors.

3. Connect the EG-D2 as shown.

4. Tune the television to the video channel.

5. Turn the camera on. The camera will function normally; while the monitor is on, the image in the monitor will be shown on the television screen or recorded to video tape.

**Use an AC Adapter**
Use of an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately) is recommended for extended playback. When the EH-6 is connected, the camera monitor-off delay will be fixed at ten minutes and the exposure meters will no longer turn off automatically.

**Video Output (209)**
Be sure that the video standard matches the standard used in the video device. Note that resolution will drop when images are output on a PAL device.

**Audio Output (212)**
Set Via VIDEO OUT to play back or record voice memos on the video device.
The supplied UC-E4 USB cable can be used to connect the camera to a computer. Once the camera is connected, the supplied software can be used to copy photographs to the computer, where they can be browsed, viewed, and retouched. The camera can also be used with Nikon Capture 4 (available separately), which supports batch processing and more advanced image editing options and can be used to control the camera directly from the computer.

**Before Connecting the Camera**

Install the necessary software after reading the manuals and reviewing the system requirements. To ensure that data transfer is not interrupted, be sure the camera battery is fully charged. If in doubt, charge the battery before use or use an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately).

Before connecting the camera, set the USB option in the setup menu (206) according to the computer operating system and whether the camera is being controlled from Nikon Capture 4 Camera Control or photographs are being transferred to the computer:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Transfer</th>
<th>Nikon Capture 4 Camera Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows XP Home Edition</td>
<td>Choose PTP or Mass Storage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows XP Professional</td>
<td></td>
<td>Choose PTP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac OS X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 2000 Professional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Millennium Edition (Me)</td>
<td>Choose Mass Storage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 98 Second Edition (SE)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac OS 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Connecting the USB Cable

1. Turn the computer on and wait for it to start up.

2. Turn the camera off.

3. Connect the UC-E4 USB cable as shown below. Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.


Do not select PTP when using Nikon Transfer under one of the above operating systems. If the camera has been connected to a computer running one of the above operating systems with PTP selected, disconnect the camera as described below. Be sure to select Mass storage before reconnecting the camera.

Windows 2000 Professional/Windows Me/Windows 98 SE
The Windows hardware wizard will be displayed. Click Cancel to exit the wizard, and then disconnect the camera.

Mac OS 9
A dialog will be displayed stating that the computer is unable to use the driver needed for the "NIKON DSC D2H" USB device. Click Cancel to close the dialog, then disconnect the camera.
4 Turn the camera on.

If **Mass Storage** is selected for **USB**, **PC** will be displayed in the rear control panel and viewfinder. The aperture display in the top control panel will also show **PC**, and the PC mode indicator will flash (if **PTP** is selected, the camera displays will only change when Nikon Capture 4 Camera Control is running). Photographs can be transferred to the computer as described in the documentation provided on the reference CD.

If the Nikon Capture 4 Camera Control component is running, the top control panel will show **PC** in place of the number of exposures remaining. Any photographs taken will be recorded to the computer hard disk rather than the camera memory card. See the **Nikon Capture 4 User’s Manual** for more information.

---

**Do Not Turn the Camera Off**

Do not turn the camera off while transfer is in progress.
Disconnecting the Camera

If PTP is selected for USB (213), the camera can be turned off and the USB cable disconnected once transfer is complete. If the USB option in the camera setup menu is still at its default setting of Mass storage, the camera must first be removed from the system as described below.

Windows XP Home Edition/Windows XP Professional
Click the “Safely Remove Hardware” icon ( ) in the taskbar and select Safely remove USB Mass Storage Device from the menu that appears.

Windows 2000 Professional
Click the “Unplug or Eject Hardware” icon ( ) in the taskbar and select Stop USB Mass Storage Device from the menu that appears.

Windows Millennium Edition (Me)
Click the “Unplug or Eject Hardware” icon ( ) in the taskbar and select Stop USB Disk from the menu that appears.

Windows 98 Second Edition (SE)
In My Computer, click with the right mouse button on the removable disk corresponding to the camera and select Eject from the menu that appears.

Macintosh
Drag the camera volume (“NIKON_D2H” or “NIKON D2H”) into the Trash.
This chapter covers the following topics:

**Optional Accessories**
A list of the lenses and other accessories available for the D2H.

**Caring for the Camera**
Information on storage and maintenance.

**Troubleshooting**
A list of the error messages displayed by your camera and how to deal with them.

**Specifications**
Principal specifications for the D2H.
## Lenses for the D2H

The D2H is compatible with a variety of AF Nikkor lenses for 35-mm film cameras, including wide-angle, telephoto, zoom, micro, defocus image control (DC), and regular lenses with focal lengths of 14–600 mm (230). Note that IX Nikkor CPU lenses can not be used with the D2H.

The lenses that can be used with the D2H are listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens/accessory</th>
<th>Camera setting</th>
<th>Focus mode</th>
<th>Exposure mode</th>
<th>Metering system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU lenses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type G or D AF Nikkor&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S, AF-I Nikkor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC-Micro Nikkor 85 mm f/2.8D&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S/AF-I Teleconverter&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other AF Nikkor (except lenses for F3AF)</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;9&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;9&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI-P Nikkor</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;10&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI-, AI-S, or Series E Nikkor&lt;sup&gt;12&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;10&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI modified Nikkor</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;17&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical Nikkor 120 mm f/4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflex Nikkor</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;13&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC-Nikkor</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI-type Teleconverter&lt;sup&gt;18&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC-16A AF Teleconverter</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB-6 Bellows Focusing Attachment&lt;sup&gt;19&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto extension rings (PK-series 11A, 12, or 13; PN-11)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. Spot metering meters selected focus area.
2. IX-Nikkor lenses can not be used.
3. Vibration Reduction (VR) supported with VR lenses.
4. The camera's exposure metering and flash control systems do not work properly when shifting and/or tilting the lens, or when an aperture other than the maximum aperture is used.
5. Electronic range finder can not be used with shifting or tilting.
7. Compatible with AF-I Nikkor lenses and with all AF-S lenses except DX 12–24 mm f/4G ED, 17–35 mm f/2.8D ED, DX 17–55 mm f/2.8G ED, 24–85 mm f/3.5–4.5G ED, VR 24–120 mm f/3.5–5.6G ED, and 28–70 mm f/2.8D ED.
8. With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
9. When focusing at minimum focus distance with AF 80–200 mm.
f/2.8S, AF 35–70 mm f/2.8S, new AF 28–85 mm f/3.5–4.5S, or AF 28–85 mm f/3.5–4.5S lens at maximum zoom, in-focus indicator may be displayed when image on matte screen in viewfinder is not in focus. Adjust focus manually until image in viewfinder is in focus.

10 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
11 Some lenses can not be used (see below),
12 Range of rotation for Ai 80–200 mm f/2.8S ED tripod mount limited by camera body. Filters can not be exchanged while Ai 200–400 mm f/4S ED is mounted on camera.
13 If maximum aperture is specified using Non-CPU lens data option in shooting menu, aperture value will be displayed in viewfinder and top control panel.
14 Can be used only if lens focal length and maximum aperture are specified using Non-CPU lens data option in shooting menu. Use spot or center-weighted metering if desired results are not achieved.
15 For improved precision, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture using Non-CPU lens data option in shooting menu.

✓ Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses

The following accessories and non-CPU lenses can NOT be used with the D2H:

- Non-AI lenses
- Lenses that require the AU-1 focusing unit (400 mm f/4.5, 600 mm f/5.6, 800 mm f/8, 1200 mm f/11)
- Fisheye (6 mm f/5.6, 8 mm f/8, OP 10 mm f/5.6)
- 21 mm f/4 (old type)
- K2 rings
- ED 180–600 mm f/8 (serial numbers 174041–174180)
- ED 360–1200 mm f/11 (serial numbers 174031–174127)
- 200–600 mm f/9.5 (serial numbers 280001–300490)
- Lenses for the F3AF (80 mm f/2.8, 200 mm f/3.5, TC-16 Teleconverter)
- PC 28 mm f/4 (serial number 180900 or earlier)
- PC 35 mm f/2.8 (serial numbers 851001–906200)
- PC 35 mm f/3.5 (old type)
- 1000 mm f/6.3 Reflex (old type)
- 1000 mm f/11 Reflex (serial numbers 142361–143000)
- 2000 mm f/11 Reflex (serial numbers 200111–200310)
- PC 28 mm f/4 (serial number 180900 or earlier)
- PC 35 mm f/2.8 (serial numbers 851001–906200)
- PC 35 mm f/3.5 (old type)
- 1000 mm f/6.3 Reflex (old type)
- 1000 mm f/11 Reflex (serial numbers 142361–143000)
- 2000 mm f/11 Reflex (serial numbers 200111–200310)

⚠ Compatible Non-CPU Lenses

If lens data are specified using the Non-CPU lens data option in the shooting menu, many of the features available with CPU lenses can also be used with non-CPU lenses. If lens data are not specified, color matrix metering can not be used, and center-weighted metering is used when matrix metering is selected.

Non-CPU lenses can only be used in exposure modes A and M, when aperture must be set using the lens aperture ring. If the maximum aperture has not been specified using Non-CPU lens data, the camera aperture display will show the number of stops from maximum aperture; the actual aperture value must be read off the lens aperture ring. Aperture-priority auto will be selected automatically in exposure modes P and S. The exposure-mode indicator in the top control panel will blink, and A will be displayed in the viewfinder.
CPU lenses can be identified by the presence of CPU contacts. Type G lenses are marked with a “G” on the lens barrel, type D lenses with a “D.”

Type G lenses are not equipped with a lens aperture ring. Unlike other CPU lenses, there is no need to lock the aperture ring at the minimum aperture setting (maximum f/number) when using a type G lens.

**Picture Angle and Focal Length**

A 35-mm camera has a diagonal picture angle approximately one-and-a-half times that of the D2H. When calculating the focal length of the lenses for the D2H in 35-mm format, you will therefore need to multiply the focal length of the lens by 1.5, as shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Picture angle</th>
<th>Approximate focal length (mm) in 35-mm format (modified for picture angle)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>35-mm film camera</strong></td>
<td>17 20 24 28 35 50 60 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2H</strong></td>
<td>25.5 30 36 42 52.5 75 90 127.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>35-mm film camera</strong></td>
<td>105 135 180 200 300 400 500 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2H</strong></td>
<td>157.5 202.5 270 300 450 600 750 900</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Calculating Picture Angle**

The size of the area exposed by a 35-mm camera is 36 × 24 mm. The size of the area exposed by the D2H, in contrast, is 23.3 × 15.5 mm. As a result, the picture angle of photographs taken with the D2H differs from the picture angle for 35-mm cameras, even when the focal length of the lens and the distance to the subject are the same.
**Other Accessories**

At the time of writing, the following accessories were available for the D2H. Contact your retailer or local Nikon representative for details.

| Batteries/Chargers/AC adapters | ♦ EN-EL4 Rechargeable Li-ion Battery  
Additional EN-EL4 batteries are available from local retailers and Nikon service representatives.  
♦ MH-21 Quick Charger  
The MH-21 can be used to recharge and calibrate EN-EL4 batteries. It can fully recharge an exhausted EN-EL4 battery in about 100 minutes.  
♦ EH-6 AC Adapter  
The EH-6 can be used with AC power sources of 50–60 Hz and 100–120 V or 200–240 V. Separate power cables are available for use in North America, the United Kingdom, continental Europe, Australia, and Japan. |
| Wireless LAN adapters and antennas | ♦ WT-1/WT-1A Wireless Transmitter  
The WT-1/WT-1A mounts on the bottom of the camera and connects via a USB cable to the camera’s USB connector. When connected, photographs can be uploaded to an ftp server via a wireless network. Power is supplied from the camera. Wireless network with ftp server required. For more information, see “Menu Guide: The Setup Menu” (206).  
♦ WA-E1 Extended Range Antenna  
Extends line-of-sight range of WT-1/WT-1A to a maximum of about 150 m (outdoors, 1 Mbps) |

**Use Only Nikon Brand Electronic Accessories**

Your Nikon D2H digital camera is designed to the highest standards and includes complex electronic circuitry. Only Nikon brand electronic accessories (including battery chargers, batteries, and AC adapters) certified by Nikon specifically for use with your Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within the operational and safety requirements of this electronic circuitry.

**The use of non-Nikon electronic accessories could damage your camera and may void your Nikon warranty.** The use of third-party rechargeable Li-ion batteries not approved by Nikon could interfere with normal operation of the camera or result in the batteries overheating, igniting, rupturing, or leaking.

For more information about Nikon brand accessories, contact your local authorized Nikon dealer.
### Focusing Screens

The following focusing screens are available for the D2H:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type B</th>
<th>A type B BriteView focusing screen is included with the camera.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type E</td>
<td>The type E clear-matte focusing screen is etched with a grid, making it suitable for copying and architectural photography. Best results are achieved with PC-Nikkor lenses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### DG-2 Magnifier

The DG-2 magnifies the scene displayed in the viewfinder. Use for close-up photography, copying, telephoto lenses, and other tasks that call for added precision. DK-7 eyepiece adapter (available separately) required.

#### DK-14 and DK-17A Antifog Finder Eyepieces

These viewfinder eyepieces prevent fogging in humid or cold conditions. The DK-17A is equipped with a safety lock.

#### DK-2 Rubber Eyepiece Cup

The DK-2 makes the image in the viewfinder easier to see, preventing eye fatigue.

#### Diopter-Adjustment Viewfinder Lenses

To accommodate individual differences in vision, viewfinder lenses are available with diopters of $-3$, $-2$, $0$, $+1$, and $+2\,m^{-1}$. The DK-17C is equipped with a safety lock.

#### DR-4 Right-Angle Viewing Attachment

The DR-4 attaches at a right angle to the viewfinder eyepiece, allowing the image in the viewfinder to be viewed from above when the camera is in the horizontal shooting position.

#### DK-7 Eyepiece Adapter

The DK-7 is used when attaching the DG-2 Magnifier or DR-3 Right-Angle Viewing Attachment to the D2H.
**Optional Accessories**

### Speedlights

- **SB-800 Speedlight**
  This high performance Speedlight has a Guide Number of 53/174 (m/ft, 35-mm zoom head position, ISO 200, 20°C/68°F; GN at ISO 100 is 38/125) and supports i-TTL, TTL, auto aperture (AA), non-TTL auto (A), manual, and repeating flash control. Flash sync mode, including slow and rear-curtain sync, can be set from the camera. When used with the D2H, the SB-800 supports Auto FP High-Speed Sync for sync speeds faster than ½s (repeating flash mode excluded), Flash Color Information Communication for natural color balance, FV Lock for recomposing photos without changing flash level, and Advanced Wireless Lighting with support for i-TTL, auto aperture, manual, and repeating flash control. The built-in AF-assist illuminator can be used with all of the D2H’s eleven focus areas. For bounce-flash or close-up photography, the flash head can be rotated through 90° above and 7° below the horizontal, 180° left, and 90° right, while soft lighting can be achieved with the supplied SW-10H bounce adapter. Auto power zoom (24–105 mm) ensures that the illuminating is adjusted in accord with lens focal length. The built-in wide panel can be used for illuminating angles of 14 mm and 17 mm. An illuminator is included to assist in adjusting settings in the dark. The SB-800 accepts four AA batteries (five AA batteries when powered by the supplied SD-800 battery pack) or SD-6, SD-7, or SD-8A power sources (available separately). Custom settings are available for fine-tuning all aspects of flash operation.

### Filters

- Nikon filters can be divided into three types: screw-in, drop-in, and rear-interchange. Use Nikon filters; filters manufactured by other makers may interfere with autofocus or electronic range finding.
- The D2H can not be used with linear polarizing filters. Use the C-PL circular polarizing filter instead.
- The NC and L37C filters are recommended for protecting the lens.
- When using an R60 filter, set exposure compensation to +1.
- To prevent moiré, use of a filter is not recommended when the subject is framed against a bright light, or when a bright light source is in the frame.
- Color matrix and 3D color matrix metering may not produce the desired results when used with filters with an exposure factor (filter factor) over 1× (Y44, Y48, Y52, O56, R60, X0, X1, C-PL, ND2S, ND4S, ND4, ND8S, ND8, ND400, A2, A12, B2, B8, B12). We recommend center-weighted metering. For details, see the manual provided with the filter.
♦ SB-80DX Speedlight
This high performance Speedlight has a Guide Number of 53/174 (m/ft, 35-mm zoom head position, ISO 200, 20°C/68°F; GN at ISO 100 is 38/125) and accepts four LR6 (AA) alkaline batteries or SD-7, SD-8A, and SK-6 power sources (available separately). For bounce-flash or close-up photography, the flash head can be rotated through 90° above and 7° below the horizontal, 180° left, and 90° right; a wide panel or bounce adapter can be used for a wider flash angle, producing soft lighting that balances the foreground subject with the background. An illuminator is included to assist in adjusting settings in the dark. Custom settings can be used to fine-tune all aspects of operation.

♦ SB-50DX Speedlight
This Guide Number 32/105 Speedlight (m/ft, manual mode, 35-mm zoom-head position, ISO 200, 20°C/68°F; GN at ISO 100 is 22/72) is powered by two CR123A (DL123A) 3 V lithium batteries. In addition to auto power zoom, it has a tilt position of +90° to –18°, allowing it to be used both for bounce-flash photography and at ranges as close as 30 cm (1’).

PC card adapters
♦ EC-AD1 PC Card Adapter
The EC-AD1 PC card adapter allows Type I CompactFlash memory cards to be inserted in PCMCIA card slots.

Software
♦ Nikon Capture 4
Nikon Capture 4 can be used to capture photos to a computer and to edit and save RAW images in other formats.
The D2H is equipped with a ten-pin remote terminal for remote control and automatic photography. The terminal is provided with a cap, which protects the contacts when the terminal is not in use. The following accessories can be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accessory</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MC-20 Remote Cord</td>
<td>Remote shutter release; can be used to reduce camera shake.</td>
<td>80 cm (2’7”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC-21 Extension Cord</td>
<td>Can be connected to MC-series 20, 22, 25, or 30.</td>
<td>3 m (9’10”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC-22 Remote Cord</td>
<td>Remote shutter release with blue, yellow, and black terminals for connection to a remote shutter-triggering device, allowing control via sound or electronic signals.</td>
<td>1 m (3’3”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC-23 Connecting Cord</td>
<td>Connects two D2H cameras for simultaneous operation.</td>
<td>40 cm (1’4”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC-25 Adapter Cord</td>
<td>Ten-pin to two-pin adapter cord for connection to devices with two-pin terminals, including the MW-2 radio control set, MT-2 intervalometer, and ML-2 modulite control set.</td>
<td>20 cm (8”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC-30 Remote Cord</td>
<td>Remote shutter release; can be used to reduce camera shake or keep the shutter open during a time exposure.</td>
<td>80 cm (2’7”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML-2 Modulite Remote Control Set</td>
<td>Allows infrared remote control at ranges of up to 100 m (328’). Use multiple units for remote control over greater distances. Requires MC-25 adapter cord.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML-3 Modulite Remote Control Set</td>
<td>Allows infrared remote control at ranges of up to 8 m (26’).</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* All figures are approximate.
## Approved Memory Cards

The following cards have been tested and approved for use in the D2H:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDCF (Type II)</td>
<td></td>
<td>300 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDCF2B (Type II)</td>
<td></td>
<td>256 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDCFH</td>
<td></td>
<td>128 MB, 192 MB, 256 MB, 384 MB, 512 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4× USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>16 MB, 32 MB, 48 MB, 64 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8× USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>160 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10× USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>64 MB, 128 MB, 192 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12× USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>192 MB, 256 MB, 320 MB, 512 MB, 640 MB, 1 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16× USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>256 MB, 512 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24× USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24× WA USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>256 MB, 512 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32× WA USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>256 MB, 512 MB, 2 GB, 4 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40× WA USB</td>
<td></td>
<td>10340 (340 MB), 10512 (512 MB), 11000 (1 GB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lexar Media</td>
<td></td>
<td>16 MB, 32 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact FLASH HB28 C8×</td>
<td></td>
<td>16 MB, 32 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microdrive</td>
<td>DSCM</td>
<td>10340 (340 MB), 10512 (512 MB), 11000 (1 GB)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Operation is not guaranteed with other makes of card. For more details on the above cards, please contact the manufacturer.

### Memory Cards

- Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
- Format memory cards before first use.
- Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card.
- Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
- Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
- Do not expose to water, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.

### The Control Panel

Rarely, static electricity may cause the control panel to brighten or darken. This does not indicate a malfunction; the display will shortly return to normal.
**Storage**

When the camera will not be used for an extended period, replace the monitor cover, remove the battery, and store the battery in a cool, dry area with the terminal cover in place. To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. For long-term storage, place the camera in a plastic bag containing a desiccant (note that desiccant gradually loses its capacity to absorb moisture and should be replaced at regular intervals). Do not store your camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls or in locations that:

- are poorly ventilated or damp
- are next to equipment that produces strong electromagnetic fields, such as televisions or radios
- are exposed to temperatures above 50°C/122°F (for example, near a space heater or in a closed vehicle on a hot day) or below –10°C (14°F)
- are subject to humidities of over 60%

To prevent mold or mildew, take the camera out of storage at least once a month. Turn the camera on and release the shutter a few times before putting the camera away again.

**Cleaning**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camera body</td>
<td>Use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off sand or salt with a cloth lightly dampened in distilled water and dry thoroughly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens, mirror, and viewfinder</td>
<td>These elements are made of glass and are easily damaged. Remove dust and lint with a blower. If using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent the discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and clean with care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Remove dust and lint with a blower. When removing fingerprints and other stains, wipe the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Do not apply pressure, as this could result in damage or malfunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambient light sensor</td>
<td>Use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use alcohol or lens cleaning solutions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Monitor**

Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury caused by broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from entering your eyes and mouth.
Replacing the Focusing Screen

The D2H is supplied with type B BriteView focusing screen. An optional type E clear-matte Fresnel screen is available for tracing and architectural photography (232). To change focusing screens:

1. Turn the camera off and remove the lens.

2. Using the tweezers supplied with the focusing screen, pull the focusing screen latch towards you. The screen holder will spring open.

3. Remove the existing screen, using the supplied tweezers and being careful to handle the screen by the tab to avoid scratches.

4. Using the tweezers and handling the screen by the tab, set the replacement screen in the holder.

5. Push the front edge of holder upward until it clicks into place.

- **Replacing Focusing Screens**
  Do not touch the surface of the mirror or focusing screens.

- **Focusing Screens**
  Use only screens designated for use in the D2H.
Replacing the Clock Battery

The camera clock is powered by a CR1616 lithium battery with a life of about four years. When the clock battery is exhausted, a icon will be displayed in the top control panel while the exposure meters are on. When a icon blinks in the top control panel while the exposure meters are on, photographs can still be taken but will not be stamped with the correct time and date, and interval timer photography will not function correctly. Replace the battery as described below.

1. The clock battery chamber is located on the roof of the main battery chamber. Turn the camera off and remove the EN-EL4 battery.

2. Slide the clock battery chamber cover toward the front of the main battery chamber.

3. Remove the clock battery.

4. Insert new CR1616 lithium battery so that the positive side (the side marked with “+” and the battery name) is visible.

5. Slide the clock battery chamber cover towards the back of the main battery chamber until it clicks into place.


⚠️ CAUTION

Use only CR1616 lithium batteries. Using another type of battery could cause an explosion. Dispose of used batteries as directed.

✔️ Inserting the Clock Battery

Insert the clock battery in the correct orientation. Inserting the battery incorrectly could not only prevent the clock from functioning but could damage the camera.

⚠️ Setting the Time and Date

Be sure to set the time and date after replacing the clock battery (19).
The Low-Pass Filter

The LBCAST image sensor that acts as the camera’s picture element is fitted with a low-pass filter to prevent moiré. Although this filter prevents foreign objects from adhering directly to the image sensor, under certain conditions dirt or dust on the filter may appear in photographs. If you suspect that dirt or dust inside the camera is affecting your photographs, you can check for the presence of foreign objects on the low-pass filter as described below.

1. Turn the camera off and connect an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately). If you do not have access to an EH-6 AC adapter, take the camera to a Nikon-authorized service center.

2. Remove the lens and turn the camera on.

3. Press the button and select **Mirror lock-up** from the setup menu (208). Highlight **Image sensor cleaning** and press the multi selector to the right. The message, “Press shutter-release button” will be displayed in the camera monitor, and a row of dashes will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder.

4. Press the shutter-release button all the way down. The mirror will be raised and the shutter curtain will open, revealing the low-pass filter, and the row of dashes in the control panel will blink.

5. Holding the camera so that light falls on the low-pass filter, examine the filter for dust or lint. If there are foreign objects on the filter, the filter requires cleaning. See the following section.
6 Turn the camera off. The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap and disconnect the AC adapter.

**Cleaning the Low-Pass Filter**
The low-pass filter is extremely delicate and easily damaged. Nikon recommends that filter be cleaned only by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Should you choose to clean the filter yourself, follow the steps below.

1 Raise the mirror as described in steps 1–4 on the preceding page.

2 Remove dust and lint from the filter with a blower. Do not use a blower-brush, as the bristles could damage the filter. Dirt that can not be removed with a blower can only be removed by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Under no circumstances should you touch or wipe the filter.

3 Turn the camera off. The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap and disconnect the AC adapter.

**Servicing the Camera and Accessories**
The D2H is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or Nikon service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional Speedlights, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.
This section lists the indicators and error messages that appear in the viewfinder, control panel, and monitor when there is a problem with the camera. Consult the list below before contacting your retailer or Nikon representative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Control panel</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E F E</td>
<td>(blinks)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lens aperture ring is not set to minimum aperture.</td>
<td>Set ring to minimum aperture (largest f/-number).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Low battery.</td>
<td>Ready a fully-charged spare battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(blinks)</td>
<td>(blinks)</td>
<td>Battery exhausted.</td>
<td>Replace battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(blinks)</td>
<td>(blinks)</td>
<td>Battery can not be used.</td>
<td>Contact Nikon-authorized service representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No lens attached, or non-CPU lens attached without specifying maximum aperture. Aperture shown in stops from maximum aperture.</td>
<td>Aperture value will be displayed if maximum aperture is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(blinks)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Camera unable to focus using autofocus.</td>
<td>Focus manually.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|           |               |             | Subject too bright; photo will be overexposed. | • Choose a lower sensitivity (ISO equivalency)  
|           |               |             |                     | • Use optional ND filter  
|           |               |             |                     | • In exposure mode:  
|           |               |             |                     | S Increase shutter speed  
|           |               |             |                     | A Choose a smaller aperture (larger f/-number) |
|           |               |             | Subject too dark; photo will be underexposed. | • Choose a higher sensitivity (ISO equivalency)  
|           |               |             |                     | • Use optional Speedlight  
|           |               |             |                     | • In exposure mode:  
|           |               |             |                     | S Lower shutter speed  
|           |               |             |                     | A Choose a larger aperture (smaller f/-number) |

242
### Technical Notes—Troubleshooting

#### Indicator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control panel</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="blinks" alt="indicator" /></td>
<td><img src="blinking" alt="blinking" /></td>
<td>Speedlight that does not support D-TTL flash control attached and set to TTL.</td>
<td>Change flash mode setting on optional Speedlight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="blinking" alt="indicator" /></td>
<td><img src="blinking" alt="blinking" /></td>
<td>Speedlight that does not support red-eye reduction attached and flash sync mode set to red-eye reduction.</td>
<td>Change flash sync mode or use Speedlight that supports red-eye reduction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="blinking" alt="indicator" /></td>
<td><img src="blinking" alt="blinking" /></td>
<td>If indicator blinks for 3 s after flash fires, photo may be underexposed.</td>
<td>Check photo in monitor; if underexposed, adjust settings and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="blinks" alt="indicator" /></td>
<td><img src="blinking" alt="blinking" /></td>
<td>Camera malfunction.</td>
<td>Release shutter. If error persists or appears frequently, consult with Nikon-authorized service representative.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![indicator](blinking) | ![blinking](blinking) | Memory insufficient to record further photos at current settings, or camera has run out of file or folder numbers. | • Reduce quality or size.  
• Delete photographs.  
• Insert new memory card. |

#### Monitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Control panel</th>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NO CARD PRESENT</td>
<td><img src="display" alt="display" /></td>
<td>Camera cannot detect memory card.</td>
<td>Turn camera off and confirm that card is correctly inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARD IS NOT FORMATTED</td>
<td><img src="display" alt="display" /></td>
<td>Memory card has not been formatted for use in D2H.</td>
<td>Format memory card.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Indicator Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor: THIS CARD CANNOT BE USED (blinks)</td>
<td>• Error accessing memory card.</td>
<td>• Use Nikon-approved card.</td>
<td>236,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel: FOLDER CONTAINS NO IMAGES</td>
<td>• Unable to create new folder.</td>
<td>• Check that contacts are clean. If card is damaged, contact retailer or</td>
<td>iv,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Card has not been formatted for use in D2H.</td>
<td>Nikon representative.</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No images on memory card or folder(s) selected for playback contain no</td>
<td>• Delete files or insert new memory card.</td>
<td>22,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>images.</td>
<td></td>
<td>148,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All photos in current folder are hidden.</td>
<td>No images can be played back until another folder has been selected or</td>
<td>150,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All images hidden.</td>
<td>Hide image used to allow at least one image to be displayed.</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel: FILE DOES NOT CONTAIN IMAGE</td>
<td>File has been created or modified using a computer or different make of</td>
<td>Delete file or reformat memory card.</td>
<td>23,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>camera, or file is corrupt.</td>
<td></td>
<td>148,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras

In extremely rare instances, unusual characters may appear in the control panel and the camera may stop functioning. In most cases, this phenomenon is caused by a strong external static charge. Turn the camera off, remove and replace the battery, and turn the camera on again, or, if you are using an AC adapter (available separately), disconnect and reconnect the adapter and turn the camera on again. In the event of continued malfunction, contact your retailer or Nikon representative. Note that disconnecting the power source as described above may result in loss of any data not recorded to the memory card at the time the problem occurred. Data already recorded to the card will not be affected.
## Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Single-lens reflex digital camera with interchangeable lenses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Effective pixels</td>
<td>4.1 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBCAST image sensor</td>
<td>23.3 × 15.5 mm; total pixels: 4.26 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image size (pixels)</td>
<td>2464 × 1632 (large), 1840 × 1224 (medium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens mount</td>
<td>Nikon F mount (with AF coupling and AF contacts)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Compatible lenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type G or D AF Nikkor</th>
<th>All functions supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Micro Nikkor 85 mm F2.8D</td>
<td>All functions supported except autofocus and some exposure modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other AF Nikkor†</td>
<td>All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering and 3D multi-sensor balanced fill-flash for digital SLR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI-P Nikkor</td>
<td>All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering, 3D multi-sensor balanced fill-flash for digital SLR, and autofocus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-CPU</td>
<td>Can be used in exposure modes A and M; electronic range finder can be used if maximum aperture is f/5.6 or faster; color matrix metering, multi-sensor balanced fill-flash for digital SLR, and aperture value display supported if user provides lens data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* IX Nikkor lenses can not be used † Excluding lenses for F3AF

### Picture angle

Equivalent in 35-mm format is approximately 1.5 times lens focal length

### Viewfinder

Optical fixed pentaprism

### Diopter adjustment

$-3 - +1 \text{ m}^{-1}$

### Eyepoint

19.9 mm ($-1.0 \text{ m}^{-1}$)

### Focusing screen

Type B BriteView clear matte screen Mark II provided

### Frame coverage

Approximately 100% of lens (vertical and horizontal)

### Magnification

Approximately 0.86× (50-mm lens at infinity; $-1.0 \text{ m}^{-1}$)

### Reflex mirror

Quick return

### Lens aperture

Instant return with depth-of-field preview

### Focus-area selection

Single area or group can be selected from 11 focus areas

### Lens servo

Instant single-servo AF (S); continuous-servo AF (C); manual (M); predictive focus tracking automatically activated according to subject status in single- and continuous-servo AF
### Autofocus
- TTL phase detection by Nikon Multi-CAM2000 autofocus module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Detection range</th>
<th>-1 – +19 EV (ISO 100 at 20°C/68°F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AF-area mode</td>
<td>Single-area AF, dynamic-area AF, group dynamic-AF, dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus lock</td>
<td>Focus can be locked by pressing shutter-release button halfway (single-servo AF) or by pressing AE-L/AF-L button</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exposure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metering</th>
<th>Three-mode through-the-lens (TTL) exposure metering</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matrix</td>
<td>3D color matrix metering supported with type G and D lenses; color matrix metering available with other CPU lenses and with non-CPU lenses if user provides lens data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center-weighted</td>
<td>Weight of 75% given to 6, 8, 10, or 13-mm circle in center of frame, or weighting based on average of entire frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot</td>
<td>Meters 3-mm circle (about 2% of frame) centered on selected focus area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Range (ISO 100 equivalent, f/1.4 lens, 20°C/68°F)</th>
<th>0 – 20 EV (3D color matrix or center-weighted metering)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 – 20 EV (spot metering)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure meter coupling</th>
<th>Combined CPU and AI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure modes</th>
<th>Programmed auto with flexible program; shutter-priority auto; aperture priority auto; manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exposure compensation</td>
<td>-5 – +5 EV in increments of ⅓, ½, or 1 EV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bracketing</td>
<td>Exposure and/or flash bracketing (2–9 exposures in increments of ⅓, ½, ⅔, or 1 EV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure lock</td>
<td>Luminosity locked at detected value with AE-L/AF-L button</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shutter Speed</th>
<th>Electronically-controlled vertical-travel focal-plane shutter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30 – ⅜000 s in steps of ⅓, ½, or 1 EV, bulb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>200 – 1600 (in steps of ⅓, ½, or 1 EV), 3200, 6400 (ISO equivalent); auto gain to ISO 1600 equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>White balance</th>
<th>Auto (TTL white-balance with 1,005 pixels RGB sensor), six manual modes with fine-tuning, color temperature setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bracketing</td>
<td>2–9 exposures in increments of 1, 2, or 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Flash

| Sync contact | X-contact only; flash synchronization at up to $\frac{1}{250}$ s |
| Flash control |  |
| TTL | TTL flash control by combined five-segment TTL multi sensor with single-component IC and 1,005-pixel AE sensor  
- **SB-800**: i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR and standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR  
- **SB-80DX, 28DX, or 50DX with type G or D lens**: 3D multi-sensor balanced-fill flash for digital SLR  
- **SB-80DX, 28DX, or 50DX with other lens**: multi-sensor balanced-fill flash for digital SLR  
- **SB-80DX, 28DX, or 50DX with spot metering**: standard TTL flash for digital SLR |
| Auto aperture | Available with SB-800, 80DX, 28DX, or 50DX and CPU lens |
| Non-TTL auto | Available with such Speedlights as SB-800, 28, 27, and 22s |
| Range-priority manual | Available with SB-800 |
| Sync modes | Front curtain sync (normal), slow sync, rear-curtain sync, red-eye reduction, red-eye reduction with slow sync |
| Flash-ready indicator | Lights when SB-series Speedlight such as 800, 80DX, 28DX, 50DX, 28, 27, or 22s is fully charged; blinks for 3 s after flash is fired at full output |
| Accessory shoe | Standard ISO hot-shoe contact with safety lock |
| Creative Lighting System | With SB-800, supports Advanced Wireless Lighting, Auto FP High-Speed Sync, Flash Color Information Communication, modeling illumination, and FV Lock |

### Storage

| Media | Type I and II CompactFlash memory cards; Microdrives |
| File system | Compliant with Design Rule for Camera File System (DCF) and Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) |
| Compression |  
- **Compressed NEF (RAW)**: 12-bit lossless compression  
- **JPEG**: JPEG baseline-compliant |
<p>| Self-timer | Electronically controlled timer with 2–20 s duration |
| Depth-of-field preview | Lens aperture stopped down when depth-of-field preview button is pressed |
| Monitor | 2.5˝, 210,000-dot, low-temperature polysilicon TFT LCD with brightness adjustment |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technical Notes—Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video output</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External interface</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tripod socket</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Firmware</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Power source** | • One 11.1 V EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion battery  
• EH-6 AC adapter (available separately) |
| **Dimensions (W × H × D)** | Approximately 157.5 × 149.5 × 85.5 mm (6.2˝ × 5.9˝ × 3.4˝) |
| **Weight** | Approximately 1070 g (2 lb 6 oz) without battery, memory card, body cap, or monitor cover |
| **Operating environment** |  |
| **Temperature** | 0—40 °C (32—104 °F) |
| **Humidity** | Less than 85% (no condensation) |

- Unless otherwise stated, all figures are for a camera with a fully-charged battery operating at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (68 °F).
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.
Battery Life

The number of shots that can be taken with an EN-EL4 battery varies with the condition of the battery, temperature, and how the camera is used.

Case 1
At room temperature (20°C/68°F), approximately 2900 shots can be taken with a fully-charged (1900 mAh) EN-EL4 battery and an AF-S VR 70–200 mm f/2.8G IF ED lens (VR off) under the following standard Nikon test conditions: continuous high-speed shooting mode; continuous-servo autofocus; image quality set to JPEG Normal; image size set to Large; shutter speed ½\text{50} s; shutter-release pressed halfway for three seconds and focus cycled from infinity to minimum range three times with each shot; after six shots, monitor turned on for five seconds and then turned off; cycle repeated once exposure meters have turned off.

Case 2
At room temperature (20°C/68°F), approximately 600 shots can be taken with a fully-charged (1900 mAh) EN-EL4 battery and an AF-S VR 24–120 mm f/3.5–5.6G IF ED lens (VR off) under the following standard Nikon test conditions: single-frame shooting mode; single-servo autofocus; image quality set to JPEG Normal; image size set to Large; shutter speed ½\text{50}s; shutter-release pressed halfway for six seconds and focus cycled from infinity to minimum range once with each shot; after each shot, monitor turned on for two seconds and then turned off; cycle repeated once exposure meters have turned off.

The following can reduce battery life:
- Using the monitor
- Keeping the shutter-release button pressed halfway
- Repeated autofocus operations
- Taking NEF (RAW) or TIFF (RGB) photographs
- Slow shutter speeds

To ensure that you get the most from rechargeable Nikon EN-EL4 batteries:
- Keep the battery contacts clean. Soil contacts can reduce battery performance.
- Use batteries immediately after charging. Batteries will lose their charge if left unused.
Index

Symbols
3D color matrix metering. See Metering
3D Multi Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, 110

A
Advanced Wireless Lighting, 106
AF-area mode, 76
Aperture, 85–93
adjusting, 90
lock, 94
maximum, 83, 84, 87, 107, 109, 116
minimum, 20, 87, 230
non-CPU lenses and, 124
value display, 7, 11
Ambient light sensor, 51, 57
Auto meter off, 187
Autoexposure lock, 95
 Autofocus, 76
continuous-servo, 72
focus tracking, 73
single-area AF, 72
single-servo, 72
Auto FP high-speed sync, 107, 194

B
Backlight, control panel, 3
BASIC. See Image quality
Battery,
inserting, 17
life, 249
storage, v
Blur, reducing, 33, 48–50, 106. See also Exposure delay mode; Mirror-up mode
208, 240
Bulb. See long time exposures
Bracketing, 98–105. See also Exposure bracketing; White balance, bracketing
Brightness. See LCD Brightness

C
C. See Autofocus, continu-ous-servo
Ch. See Shooting mode
Cl. See Shooting mode
Clock-calendar, 19
Closest subject priority. See AF-area mode
Color mode, 67, 168
Color profile. See Color mode
Color temperature. See White balance
CompactFlash. See Memory card
Computer, 213, 223
Continuous shooting mode, 70, 188
Contrast. See Tone compensation
CPU lenses, 20, 228–230
Creative Lighting System, 160
Custom Settings, 170
defaults, 175
menu banks, 173
CSM. See Custom Settings;
CSM menu
CSM menu, 170–205

D
Date, 19, 209
Delete, 148, 149
Deleting, 35, 130, 148–149.
See also Memory card, formatting
all images, 149
playback menu, 148
selected images, 149
single-frame playback, 35, 130
Depth-of-field preview, 85
Digital Print Order Format, 156
 Diopter, 31, 232
DPOF. See Digital Print Order Format
D-TTL flash control, 110

E
Electronic analog exposure display, 93
Electronic range finder, 83
Exif version 2.2, 158
Exposure bracketing, 98
Exposure compensation, 97
Exposure delay mode, 3, 120
Exposure meters, 84. See also Auto meter off
Exposure mode, 85–93
aperture-priority auto, 90–91
manual, 92–93
programmed auto, 86–87
shutter-priority auto, 88–89

F
FINE. See Image quality
Flash, 106–107. See also Speedlight bracketing, 98
Flash Color Information Communication, 107
Flash-ready indicator, 117
Flash sync mode, 113
Flexible program, 87. See also Exposure mode, pro-grammed auto
Focal plane mark, 3, 83
Focus. See autofocus; focus mode; manual focus
Focus area (focus brackets), 10, 74–79
Focus lock, 80–81
Focus mode, 72–73
Focusing screen, 232
Folders, 150, 165, 191
Format, 207. See also Memory card, formatting
FV lock, 108, 201
Group dynamic-AF. See AF-area mode
Index

**H**
Hide image, 154
Highlight display, 133, 159
Histogram, 133, 159

**Hue adjustment**, 69, 169

**I**
Illuminator. See Backlight, control panel
Image dust off, 214
Image files, 42, 46–47, 191

**Image size**, 44–45

**Image quality**, 41–44

**Image review**, 159

**Image sharpening**, 65, 168

**ISO**, 168. See also Sensitivity
ISO auto, 182
i-TTL flash control, 109

**J**
JPEG, 41–42

**L**
L. See **Image size**
Language, 18, 209

**LCD brightness**, 208

**Lens**, 20–21, 228–230
attaching, 20
compatible, 228
CPU, 228, 229
non-CPU, 228–229
type D, 20, 230
type G, 20, 230
Long time-exposures, 92
Low-pass filter, iv, 240

**M**
M. See Exposure mode, manual; Manual focus; **Image size**
Manual focus, 83

**Mass storage**, 213, 223
Memory buffer, 46–47, 70–71
Memory card, 22–24
approved, 236
capacity of, 46–47
formatting, 23, 207
Metering, 84
3D color matrix, 84
center-weighted, 84
color matrix, 84
spot, 84
Microdrive. See memory card
Mirror up. See Shooting mode
Monitor, 5, 35
auto off, 187
cover, 16
Monitor pre-flashes, 108
Multi Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, 110
M-up. See Shooting mode

**N**
NEF, 41–44
Nikon Capture 4, 211, 221
Noise, 48, 85, 92
reduction, 190
NORMAL. See **Image quality**

**P**
Picture Transfer Protocol. See **PTP**.
Photo information, 132–133
Playback, 19, 129
Playback menu, 148–160
PRE. See White balance, preset
Predictive focus tracking, 73

**Print set**, 156–158
Protecting images, 137

**PTP**, 213, 223

**R**
See also **Image quality**; NEF
Red-eye reduction, 113–116

**S**
S. See Autofocus, single-servo; Exposure mode, shutter-priority auto; Shooting mode
Self-portraits. See Self-timer
Self-timer, 70, 123
Sensitivity, 48–50. See also **ISO**
Sequential file numbering, 191

Setup menu, 206–219
Shutter speed, 85–93
and flash synchronization, 113, 194

Shooting menu, 161–169
banks, 162–163
Shooting mode, 70–71
Single-frame. See Shooting mode
Single-frame playback, 19, 130–131
Size. See **Image size**
Slide show, 151–153
Speedlight, 106–117, 194, 195, 233–234. See also flash sRGB. See **Color mode**
Standard TTL Flash for Digital SLR, 110

**T**
Television, 222
TIFF-RGB. See **Image quality**
Time. See **Date**
Time exposures. See Long time-exposures
Thumbnail playback, 134–135

**Tone compensation**, 151–153

**Two-button reset**, 67, 168

**U**
USB, 213, 223. See also computer

**V**
Video device, 167
VIDEO OUT, 145, 222

**Video output**, 209
Viewfinder, 5, 31
focus. See diopter

**W**
White balance, 51–64
bracketing, 103–105
color temperature, 56
fine-tuning, 54–55
preset, 57–64

251